

## *King Arthur's Death*

The Middle English  
*Stanzaic Morte Arthur*  
and  
*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

## *Alliterative Morte Arthure*

### *Select Bibliography*

#### *Manuscript*

Lincoln Cathedral 91 (Thornton Manuscript), fol. 53a-98b; c. 1440. (Lincoln Cathedral Library)

#### *Editions*

*Morte Arthure, or The Death of Arthur.* Ed. Edmund Brock. EETS o.s. 8. New York, London, Toronto: Oxford University Press, 1871; rpt. 1961. [Very close to the manuscript, but with few notes.]

*Morte Arthure.* Ed. Erik Björkman. Alt- und mittelenglische Texte, 9. Heidelberg: Carl Winter and New York: G. E Stechert and Company, 1915. [Heavily emended, often to improve rhythm or alliteration; excellent notes and glossary.]

*The Alliterative Morte Arthure: A Critical Edition.* Ed. Valerie Krishna. New York: Bart Franklin, 1976. [An excellent conservative edition with full documentation and notes.]

*Morte Arthure: A Critical Edition.* Ed. Mary Hamel. Garland Medieval Texts, 9. New York and London: Garland, 1984. [Full apparatus; uses Winchester manuscript of Malory to elucidate the text of the alliterative poem.]

#### *Criticism*

SEASON, LARRY D. "The Alliterative *Morte Arthure* and Medieval Tragedy." *Tennessee Studies in Literature* 11 (1966), 75-87. [Argues that the conflict is between two goods and that Arthur's fall is the consequence of the heroic system that comes into conflict with Christian ideals.]

### *Alliterative Morte Arthure*

Göller, Karl Heinz, ed. *The Alliterative Morte Arthure: A Reassessment of the Poem*. Arthurian Studies, 2. Cambridge: D. S. Brewer, 1981.

Hamel, Mary. "Adventure as Structure in the Alliterative *Morte Arthure*." *Arthurian Interpretations* 3 (1988), 37-48.

Jember, Gregory K. "Tone as Meaning in the *Morte Arthure*." *Studies in Medieval English Language and Literature* 2 (1987), 95-100.

Keiser, George R. "The Theme of Justice in the Alliterative *Morte Arthure*." *Angusle Medievalis* 16 (1975), 94-109.

Kennedy, Edward Donald. "Generic Intertextuality in the English Alliterative *Morte Arthure*: The Italian Connection." In *Text and Intertext in Medieval Arthurian Literature*. Ed. Norris J. Lacy. New York: Garland, 1996. Pp. 41-56.

Lumiansky, Robert M. "The Alliterative *Morte Arthure*, the Concept of Medieval Tragedy, and the Cardinal Virtue Fortitude." In *Medieval and Renaissance Studies*. Ed. John M. Headley. Chapel Hill: University of North Carolina Press, 1968. Pp. 95-118. [Sees the poem as an "exemplum" of fortitude.]

Matthews, William. *The Tragedy of Arthur*. Berkeley and Los Angeles: University of California Press, 1960. [Still the only comprehensive, full-length study of the poem.]

Peck, Russell A. "Willfulness and Wonders: Boethian Tragedy in the Alliterative *Morte Arthure*." In *The Alliterative Tradition in the Fourteenth Century*. Ed. Bernard S. Levy and Paul E. Starmach. Kent: Kent State University Press, 1981. Pp. 153-82. [Examines geometric structure of the plot whereby the second half of the poem on Arthur's willful decline mirrors in reverse the first half on good kingship.]

Westover, Jeff. "Arthur's End: The King's Emasculation in the Alliterative *Morte Arthure*." *Chaucer Review* 32 (1998), 310-24.

For a complete bibliography of *The Alliterative Morte Arthure*, see the electronic introduction to the poem at <http://www.lib.rochester.edu/camelot/beams/alstint.htm>

For more materials on Arthurian literature see The Camelot Project:  
<http://www.lib.rochester.edu/camelot/cphome.htm>

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

Here begins Morte Arthure. In Nomine Patris et Filii et Spiritus Sancti. Amen  
par Chazite. Amen.

	Now grete glorious God through grace of Himesches	great
	And the precious prayer of his pris Moder	excellence
	Sheld us fro shamesdeede and sinfel workes	shameful deeds
	And give us grace to guie and govern us here	guide
5	In this wretched world, through virtuous living	
	That we may kaire til his court, the kingdom of heven	go to
	When our soales shall part and susder fro the body	from
	Ever to beld and to bide in bliss with Himesches;	dwell; abide
	And wisse me to warp out some word at this time	teach; utter
10	That sother void be ne vain bat worship til Himesches	neither; honor
	Plesand and profitable to the pople that them heres.	pleasing; people; hear
	Ye that last has to lithe or loves for to here	desire; have
	Of elders of olde time and of their awke deedes.	strange
	How they were lele in their law and loved God Almighty	royal; religion
15	Herkenes me hendely and holdes you stille,	Hearken; courteously
	And I shall tell you a tale that trew is and noble	true
	Of the real renkes of the Round Table	royal men
	That chef were of chivalry and cheftainis noble	chief; chieftains
	Both wary in their workes and wise men of armes,	skilled
20	Doughty in their doings and dredde by shame,	dreaded always
	Kind men and courtais and couth of court thewes,	courteous; skilled; manners
	How they won with war worshippes many,	honors
	Slogh Lucias the lithere that lord was of Rome,	Saint; wicked
	And conquered that kingrik through craftes of armes;	kingdom
25	Herkenes now hideward and heres this stoei!	Listen; here; hear
	When that the king Arthur by conquest had wonnen	won
	Casteles and kingdomes and countrees many,	countries
	And he had covered the crown of that kith riche	recovered; country
	Of all that Uter in erthe ought in his time:	Uther; earth; owned

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- |    |  |  |
|----|--|--|
| 30 | Argayle and Orkney and all these outer-iles,<br>Ireland utterly, as Ocean runnes,<br>Scathel Scotland by skill he skifles as him likes, <sup>1</sup><br>And Wales of war he won at his will,<br>Bothe Flaunders and Fraunce free till themselves | outer-iles<br>entirely; where the<br>by; to<br>to            |
| 35 | Holland and Hainault they held of him bothen,<br>Burgoigne and Bebaust and Bretain the less<br>Osiense and Gothland and Grace the rich,<br>Bayonne and Bourdeaux he belded full fair,<br>Touraine and Tolouse with towres full high,             | both<br>Brittany<br>Grasse<br>dwell in<br>towers             |
| 40 | Of Poitiers and Provence he was prince holden;<br>Of Valence and Vienne, of value so noble,<br>Of Overgæ and Anjou, those erldoms rich,<br>By conquest full cruel they knew him for lord<br>Of Navarre and Norway and Normandy eek               | considered<br><br>Auvergne; earldoms<br>acknowledged<br>also |
| 45 | Of Almaine, of Estriche, and other ynow;<br>Desmark he dressed all by drede of himselfen<br>Pro Swynne unto Swetherwike, with his sword keen! <sup>2</sup>   | Germany; Austria; many others<br>directed; dread             |

- |    |  |   |
|----|--|---|
| 50 | When he these deeds had done, he dubbed his knyghtes,<br>Devised ducheries and delt in diverse rewmes, <sup>3</sup><br>Made of his cosins kinges anointed  | relatives<br>countries where; bear<br>readers; ruled; people  |
| 55 | In kithes there they covet crownes to bere.<br>When he these rewmes had ridden and rowled the pople,<br>Then rested that real and held the Round Table;  | royal (one)<br>Sojourns; season   |
| 60 | Sujourns that seson to solace themselves<br>In Bretain the brodder, as him best likes;<br>Sithen went into Wales with his wyes all,<br>Sways into Swaldie with his snell houndes<br>For to hunt at the hertes in those high landes,<br>In Glamorgan with glee there gladship was ever,<br>And there a citee he set, by assent of his lordes<br>That Caerleon was called, with curios walles,<br>On the rich river that runnes so fair. | Great Britain; pleasure<br>Then; men<br>Mores; South Wales; swift<br>where gladness<br>city; established<br>Caerleon; skilfully made<br>great |

<sup>1</sup> Harmful Scotland with skill he rules as it pleases him

<sup>2</sup> From Swynne (an arm of the North Sea near Zealand) to Sweden, with his sharp sword

<sup>3</sup> Created and gave out dukedomes in diverse realms

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

	There he might semble his sorte to see when him liked. <sup>1</sup>	
65	Then after at Carlisle a Christemass he holdes,	Christmas
	This ilk kidd conquerour and held him for lord	same famous
	With dukes and douspeeres of diverse rewmes,	high nobles; realms
	Erles and erchevesques and other ynow,	Earls; archbishops
	Bishoppes and bachelors and banneryttes noble <sup>2</sup>	
	That bowes to his banner, busk when him likes.	go when it pleased him
70	But on the Christemass-day when they were all sembled,	
	That comlich conquerour commaundes himselfen	comely
	This ilk a lord sholde lenge and no leue take	such; should remain; leave
	To the tenside day fully were taken to the end.	rent
	Thus on real array he held his Round Table	royal
75	With semblaunt and solace and selcouthe metes;	splendor; rare foods
	Was never such noblay in so marnes time	nobleness
	Made in mid-winter in the West Marches!	those
	But on the New-Yere day, at the noon even,	New Year's; exactly
80	As the bold at the borde was of bred served, <sup>3</sup>	
	So come in sodenly a senaour of Rome,	suddenly
	With sixteen knyghtes in a suite, seward him one;	company following; alone
	He salued the sovereign and the salo after	saluted; hall
	Ilk a king after king, and made his inclines;	Each; bows
	Gaynor in her degree he grette as him liked	greeted; pleased
85	And sinn again to the gome he gave up his needes. <sup>4</sup>	
	"Sir Lucius Iberias, the Emperour of Rome,	
	Salues thee as subjet, under his sele rich;	Sahent; subject; seal
	It is credens, Sir King, with cruel wordes;	credentials
	Trow it for no troubles, his targe is to shew! <sup>5</sup>	
90	Now in this New-Yeres Day, with notaries sign,	half; plaid
	I make thee summons in sale to sew for thy landes,	
	That on Lamass Day there be no let founden	August 1; hindrance found
	That thou be redy at Rome with all thy Round Table	ready

<sup>1</sup>Where he might assemble his followers to go to sea when it pleased him

<sup>2</sup> Bishoppes and young knyghtes (bachelors) and noble senior knyghtes (banneryttes)

<sup>3</sup> As the bold men at the table were served with bread (the first course)

<sup>4</sup> And then (he bowed) again to the man (Arthur) and delivered his message

<sup>5</sup> Think it not a triffe, his shield (armorial device) is to be seen hereon

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

95	Appere in his presence with thy pris knighthes At prime of the day, in pain of your lives, In the kidd Capitoll before the king selven When he and his senatours beset as them likes, To answer only why thou occupies the landes That owe homage of old till him and his elders,	Appear; excellent first hour; on famous; himself are; it pleases them alone to
100	Why thou has ridden and rained and ransound the pople And killed down his cosins, kinges annointed; There shall thou give reckoning for all thy Roound Table, Why thou art rebel to Rome and restes them with-holdes!	robbed; ransomed kinnesse reverse
105	Yif thou these summons withsit, he sendes thee these wordes: He shall thee seek over the se, with sixteen kinges, Brin Bretain the broade and britten thy knighthes <sup>1</sup> And bring thee baxomly as a besee with brethe where him likes,	if; maior sea
110	That thou se shall route ne rest under the heven rich Though thou for reddone of Rome run to the erthe! For if thou flee into Fraunce or Frisland other.	Frisia either overthrown
115	Thou shall be fetched with force and overset forever! Thy fader made fewe we find in our rollis, In the regestre of Rome, who-so right lookes; Withouten more troulling the tribate we ask	father; fadly; records registry trouling
	That Julius Cesar won with his gentle knighthes! <sup>2</sup>	noble

120	The king blushed on the berse with his broade eyen, <sup>3</sup> That full bremly for brethe breast as the gledes, Cast colours as the king with crac lates Looked as a lion and on his lip bites.	Turned pale; frances
125	The Romanes for sadness rushit to the erthe, For ferdness of his face as they fey were; Couched as kennetes before the king selven; Because of his countenance confused them seemed!	fear; ground fear; fayed to die Crouched like hounds they seemed
	Then covered up a knight and cried fall load: "King, crowned of kind, courtais and noble,"	got up (on his knees) by nature courteous

<sup>1</sup> Burn Britain the broad (Great Britain) and beat down your knighthes / And with anger bring you complaisantly as a beast where he pleases / And you shall not sleep nor rest under the great heaven, / Though for fear of Rome you run to the earth (like a hunted animal)

<sup>2</sup> The king looked on the man with his large eyes, / Which burned very fiercely like coals because of (his) anger

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

	Mido no messenger for mensk of thyselfen,	Harm; honor
	Scan we are in thy manrode and mercy thee beseeches;	Since; power; beseech
	We lenge with Sir Lucius, that lord is of Rome,	belong
	That is the marueloudest man than on molde lengeres;	most marvelous; earth
130	It is lelfel till us his liking till work. <sup>1</sup>	
	We come at his commandment; have us excused."	
	Then carpes the conquerour cruel wordes:	says
	"Ha! cravand knight, a coward thee seemes!"	craven; you seem
	There is some segge in this sale, and he were sore greved <sup>2</sup>	
135	Thou durst not for all Lombardy look on him ones!"	
	"Sir," says the senaour, "so Crist met me help.	At; may
	The vout of thy visage has wounded us all!	expression
	Thou art the lordliest lede that ever I on looked.	man
	By looking, withouten lees, a lion thee seemes!"	In appearance; like; you seem
140	"Thou has me summoned," quod the king, "and said what thee likes.	
	For sake of thy soveraign I suffer thee the more;	
	Scan I crowned was in kith with crismoun annoyned,	Since; country; holy oil
	Was never creature to me that carped so large!	spoke so freely
	But I shall take counsel at kinges annoyned	from
145	Of dukes and doaspeeres and doctours noble,	high noblemen; theologians
	Of peeres of the parlament, prelates and other	parliment
	Of the richest reakes of the Round Table;	most powerful men
	Thus shall I take avisement of valiant herdes,	advice; men
	Work after the wit of my wise knyghtes.	Do according to
150	To warp woodes in waste no worship it were,	waste; honor
	No wilfullly in this wrath to wrenken myselfen.	Nor; avenge
	Forth shall thou lenge here and lode with these lordes	Therefore; remain
	This seven-night in solace to sajourn your horses,	pleasure; rest
	To see what life that we lede in these low landes."	lead; humble
155	For by the realtee of Rome, that richest was ever,	royalty; most powerful
	He commaundes Sir Kayous, "Take keep to those lordes	care of

<sup>1</sup> It is loyal (our duty) for us to do his pleasure

<sup>2</sup> There is a certain man in this hall, and he was sorely grieved / That you dared not look on him once for all Lombardy (as a reward)

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

	To stighted tho stern men as their state askes,	amonge those; requires
	That they be herbered in hante in those high chambres,	lodged; noble
	Sithen sittandy in sale served thereafter,	Then suitably in hall
160	That they find no faute of food to their boses,	lack
	Nother wine ne wax ne welth in this erthe;	candles
	Spare for no spicerie, but spend what thee likes <sup>1</sup>	
	That there be largess on loft and no lack founden;	generosity prevailing
	If thou my worship wait, wyc, by my trowth, <sup>2</sup>	
165	Theu shall have gersoms full grene that gain shall thee ever!"	
	Now are they herbered in high and in host holden, <sup>3</sup>	
	Hastily with hende men within these high walles,	nostrous; noble
	In chambers with chimpaees they changeth their weedes, <sup>4</sup>	then
	And sithen the chasscoeller them feasted with chevalry noble;	befit
170	Soon the senaotur was set as him well seemed,	noble
	At the kinges own bordre; two knighthes him served,	singly
	Singulere, soothly, as Arthur himselfe,	(alone)
	Richly on the right hand at the Round Table.	
	By reson that the Romans were so rich holden,	reason; powerful
175	As of the realest blood that regad in erthe.	most royal; reigning
	There come in at the first corsore, before the king selven,	himself
	Borehevedes that were bright, burnisht with silver	Bear-heads; adorned
	All with taught men and town in togges full rich, <sup>5</sup>	
	Of sank real in suite, sixty at ones;	
180	Flesh florishis of fermison, with frumentee noble, <sup>6</sup>	Peacocke
	There so wild to wale, and winlich broides,	Piglets; porcupine
	Pacockes and plovers in platters of gold	
	Pigges of pork despise that pastured never;	

<sup>1</sup> Don't save money on spices, but spend what you please

<sup>2</sup> If you guard my honor, man, by my pledged word, / You shall have very great rewards that will profit you forever

<sup>3</sup> Now are they nobly lodged and regarded as guests

<sup>4</sup> In chambers with chimneys (heat), they change their clothes

<sup>5</sup> All with men trained and taught, in very rich clothes, / All of royal blood in a troop, sixty together

<sup>6</sup> Flesh fattened in season with noble frumentee (a wheat dish), / Along with wild (game) to choose, and pleasant birds

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

	Sithen herons in hedoyne heled full fair,	Then; plomage concealed
185	Grete swanans full swithe in silveren chargeours, <sup>1</sup>	platters
	Tartes of Turkey, taste whom them likes;	pies; Turkey; pleases
	Gumbaldes graithly, full gracious to taste;	Beef pies readily
	Senn bowes of wild bores with the brawn leched, <sup>2</sup>	
	Bernakes and botowares in bastered dishes,	
190	Theseby brauschens in bread, better was never,	young hawks; bread
	With brestes of barrowes that bright were to shew;	breasts; pigs; be seen
	Senn come there sewes sere with solace thereafter,	Then; stews various
	Ownde of azare all over and ardaunt them seemed; <sup>3</sup>	
	Of ilk a leche the lowe launched fell high,	
195	That all lodes might like that looked them upon;	men; who
	Then cranes and curlewes craftily rosted,	roasted
	Cornies in cretoyne coloured full fair,	Rabbit; milk and spices
	Pessantes enflourished in flamand silver,	Pheasants adorned; flaming
200	With darielles endoored and dainties ynow, <sup>4</sup>	
	Then Claret and Crete clergially rennes <sup>5</sup>	
	With condethes full curios all of clese silver,	African and Spanish wines; many others
	Osay and Algarde and other ynow	
	Rhenish wine and Rochelle, richer was never,	
	Vernage of Venice, virtuous, and Crete,	White wine; full-bodied
205	In faugetes of fine gold, sondre who-so likes;	veneal; to try
	The kinges cup-bord was closed in silver,	enclosed
	In grete gobletes overgilt, glorious of hue; <sup>6</sup>	
	There was a chef butler, a chevalier noble	chief; chevalier
	Sir Kayoun the courtain, that of the cup served,	courteous
210	Sixty cuppes of suite for the king selues,	cup in a set
	Crafty and curios, corven full fair,	Skillfully made; carved

<sup>1</sup> Very many large swans on silver platters, / Pies of Turkey, to be tasted by whomever it pleases

<sup>2</sup> Then shoulders of wild boars, with the lean meat sliced, / Barnacle geese and bitterns in pastry-covered dishes

<sup>3</sup> Wary with azure-colored sauce all over, and they appeared to be flaming; / From each slice the flame leaped very high

<sup>4</sup> With pastries glazed with egg yolks and many (other) dainties

<sup>5</sup> Then Claret and Cretan wine were cunningly made to flow / By conduits that were skillfully made, all of pure silver

<sup>6</sup> With great jewels gilded over, glorious of hue

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

	In ever-ilk a party pight with precious stones,	each part adored
	That nose enpoison sholde go privily there-under <sup>1</sup>	
	But the bright gold fer brethe sholde brist all to peoces,	
215	Or else the venom sholde void through virtue of the stones;	
	And the conquerour themselves, so cleanly arrayed,	handsomely
	In colours of cleane gold cledde, with his knighthes,	pure; clad
	Dressed with his diadem on his dese rich,	dais
	For he was deemed the doughtiest that dwelled in erthe.	
220	Then the conquerour kindly carp'd to those lordes,	spoke
	Rebeteth the Romans with real speche:	Chered; royal speech
	"Sirs, bes knightly of countenaunce and comforries yourselves;	be
	We know aught in this countree of curios metes;	exotic meats
	In these barren landes beeedes nose other;	barren
225	Forthby, withoutes feining, enforce you the more <sup>2</sup>	
	To feed you with such feeble as ye before find."	poor food
	"Sir," says the senaor, "so Crist mot me help,	As; may
	There regned never such realtee within Rome walles!	reigned; royalty
	There ne is peolate ne pope ne peince in this erthe	is not; nor
230	That he ne might be well payed of these pris metes!"	pleased; excellent foods
	After their welth they wesh and went unto chamber,	bournous frost; washed
	This ilk kidd conquerour with knighthes ynow;	some famous; many knights
	Sir Gawayn the worthy Dame Waynor he ledes,	Guinevere; leads
	Sir Oughoreth on tother side, of Terry was lord.	the other
235	Then spices unsparly they spended thereafter,	unsparely; expended
	Malvesy and Muskadell, those marvelous drinke,	Malvaise and Muscadel
	Raik'd full rathely in rosset cuppes <sup>3</sup>	
	Til all the rich on row, Romans and other.	To; in turn
	But the sovereign soothly, for solace of himselfen,	pleasure
240	Assigned to the senaor certain lordes	

<sup>1</sup> So that if any poison should go secretly under them (in the cup), / The bright gold would burst all to pieces with anger. / Or else the poison should lose its power because of the virtue of the precious stones

<sup>2</sup> Therefore, without pretending (that you are enjoying it), force yourself all the more

<sup>3</sup> Went round very quickly in russet-colored (gold) cups

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

	To lode to his levere, when he his leve askes, With mirth and with melody of ministrally noble.	lead; desired place; leave musicians
245	Then the conquerour to counsel kaires thereafter With lodes of his legeaunce that to himself longes To the Giaantes Towr jollily he wendes With justices and judges and gentle knighthes.	goes allegiance; belong Tower; goes noble
250	Sir Cadoc of Cernwall to the king carpes, Laugh on him lovely with likand late; <sup>1</sup> "I thank God of that thro that thus us thretes! You must be trailesd, I trow, but yif ye tret better!	speak
	The lettres of Sir Lucius lightes mine herte. We have as losels lived many long day With delites in this land with leodshippes many And foelitened the los that we are laited.	trouble; threatens dragged; believe; unless lighten; bear waterly delight
255	I was abashed, by our Lord, of our best bernes, For grete dote of deffuse of deedes of aemes. Now wakenes the war! Worshipped be Crist! And we shall win it again by wightness and strength!"	lesured; praise; encomed by; men sadness because of the ban newawaken vigor
260	"Sir Cadoc," quod the king, "thy counsel is noble; But thou art a marvelous man with thy merry wordes! For thou countes no case ne castes no further; <sup>2</sup> But harles forth upon heved, as thy herte thinkes;	mid
	I moste trete of a trews touchand these needes, Talk of these tithandes that tocesse misc herte.	sport off; heart consider; true; matters ridings; grieve
265	Thou sees that the emperour is angred a little; It seemes by his sandesman that he is sore greved: His senaour has summonyd me and said what him likid, Hethely in my hall, with heinous wordes,	messenger; grieved
	In speche despised me and spared me little; I might not speke for spite, so my herte trembled!	Scornfully; hateful speech
270	He asked me tyrantilly tribute of Rome, That seenfully tist was in time of mine elders,	could not speak painfully lost

<sup>1</sup> Smiles at him pleasantly with pleasing features

<sup>2</sup> You take account of no circumstances, nor consider (the matter) any further

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

	There alienes, in absence of all men of armes, Coverd it of commounis, as crostiles tellis.	foreigners Obtained; commoners
275	I have title to take tribute of Rome; Mine auncestres were emperours and ought it themselves, Belin and Bremin and Bawdewyne the third;	owned
	They occupied the empire eight score winters, likon eier after other, as old men tellis;	Each one heir arose
280	They covered the Capitol and cast down the walles, Hanged of their hedesmen by hundrednes at ones;	Ared men; hundred; once
	Sean Constantine, our kinsman, conquered it after, That eier was of Yngland and emperor of Rome,	Then heir; England
	He that conquerred the cross by craftes of armes,	
285	That Crist was on crucified, that King is of heven. Thus have we evidence to ask the emperour the same, That thus regnes at Rome, what right that he claimes."	Heaven reigns
	Then answerd King Aswngers to Arthur himself:	
290	"Thou ought to be overling over to all other kings, For wisest and worthyest and wightest of handes, The knighthiest of counsel that ever crown bore.	overlord strongest
	I dare say for Scotland that we them scathe limped;	suffered harm from them
	When the Romans regned they ransoud our elders	enjoined; ransomed
295	And rode in their riot and ravished our wives, Wythouten reson or right left us our goodes;	reason; bereft us of
	And I shall make my avow devoutly to Crist	devoutly
	And to the holy vernacle, virtuous and noble, Of this grete vilany I shall be venged ones,	St. Veronica's kerchief
	On you venomous men with valiant knighthes!	villainy; avenged at once
300	I shall thee further of defence fowred ynow Twenty thousand men within two eldes	well trained ages
	Of my wage to wend where-so thee likes,	At my expense; travel
	To fight with thy fomen that us unfair ledes!"	foes; treat
	Then the burlich berne of Bretayn the Little	stately man; Brittany
305	Counsels Sir Arthur and of him beseeches To answer the alienes with austere wordes,	beseeches
	To entice the emperour to take over the mousates.	bold
	He said: "I make mine avow verily to Crist,	now
	And to the holy vernacle, that void shall I never	usage of Veronica; retreat

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- |     |   |  |
|-----|---|--|
| 310 | For radness of no Roman that regnes in erthe,<br>But ay be redy in array and at erest founeden;<br>No more doest the diates of their derf wepons<br>Than the dew that is dank when that it down falleth;<br>Ne no more shous for the swap of their sharp swoedes<br>Than for the fairest flower that on the folde growes? | fear; reigns<br>ready; the first<br><i>fear the blow;</i> grim   |
| 315 | I shall to bataile thee being of bremyed knighthes<br>Thirty thousand by tale, therly in armes,<br>Within a month-day, into what march<br>That thos will soothly assign, when thyself likes."   | shrink; sweep<br>flower; ground<br>battle; armored<br>count, prosperous<br>whatever country  |
| 320 | "A! A!" says the Welsh king, "worshipped be Crist!<br>Now shall we wreke fall well the wrath of our elders!<br>In West Wales, iwis, such wonders they wrought<br>That all for wandreth may weep that on that war thinkes.<br>I shall have the avauntward witterly myselfen,   | avenge; injury to<br>sorrow<br><i>vanguard certainly</i>   |
| 325 | Til that I have vanquisht the Viscount of Rome,<br>That wrought me at Viterbo a vilany ones,<br>As I past in pilgrimage by the Pount Tremble.<br>He was in Tuscane that time and took of our knighthes,<br>Arrest them unrightwysly and ransoond them after. <sup>1</sup>   | villainy once<br><i>Pontremoli</i><br><i>Tuscany; some of</i>  |
| 330 | I shall him surely ensure that saughtel shall we never<br>Ere we sadly assemble by ourselven ones<br>And dele dimes of deoth with our derf wepons!<br>And I shall wage to that war of worshipful knighthes,<br>Of Wyghte and of Welshland and of the West Marches,  | be reconciled<br><i>ourselves alone</i><br>deal; strong<br><i>bring at my expens</i><br><i>Isle of Wight</i>                             |
| 335 | Two thousand in tale, hорsed on steedes,<br>Of the wightest wyes in all you West Landes!"   | number<br>strongest man  |
| 340 | Sir Ewain fitz Urien then egerly fraines,<br>Was cosin to the conquerour, corageous himselfen:<br>"Sir, and we wiste your will we wolde work thereafter;<br>Yif this journee shoude hold or be ajsoured farther,<br>To ride on you Romans and riot their landes,<br>We wolde shape us therefore, to ship when you likes." | eagerly; ask<br>kinsman; courageous<br><i>if we knew; would</i><br><i>journey; adjourned</i><br><i>ravage</i><br><i>would prepare us</i> |

<sup>1</sup> Arrested them unjustly and afterwards held them for ransom.

Alliterative Morte Arthure

- "Cosin," quod the conquerour, "kindly thou askes  
Yif my counsel acced to conquer you landes."      *kinsman; said*
- 345 By the kalendes of Jany we shall encouner ones  
With full cruel knighthes, so Crist mor me help!  
Thereto I make mise avow devoutly to Crist  
And to the holy vernacle, virtuous and noble;  
I shall at Lamass take leve to lenge at my large<sup>1</sup>      *first day of June*  
350 In Lorraine or Lombardy, whether me leve thinkes;  
Merk unto Meloine and mine down the walles  
Brich of Petersand and of Pis and of the Pount Tremble;  
In the Vale of Viterbo vitail my knighthes,  
Sojourn there six weekes and solace myselfen,  
355 Send prikers to the pris town and plant there my sega  
But if they proffer me the pees by process of time."  
      *as; may*  
      *devoutly*  
      *image of Veronica*
- "Ceries," says Sir Ewain, "and I avow after,  
And I that bathel may see ever with mine eyen  
That occupies thine heritage, the empire of Rome,  
I shall auinter me ones his egle to touch  
That boene is in his banner of bright gold rich,  
360 And rase it from his rich men and rive it in sonder,  
But he be readily rescued with riotous knighthes.<sup>2</sup>  
I shall enforce you in the feld with fresh men of armes,  
Fifty thousand folk upon fair steedes,  
365 On thy somen to founde there thee fair thinkes,  
In Frasnce or in Fristland, fight when thee likes!"      *Go; Milan; undermine*  
      *(see note)*  
      *supply (victuals)*  
      *Sojourn; refresh*  
      *riders; excellent; siege*  
      *Unless; peace*
- "By our Lord," quod Sir Launcelot, "now lightes mine herfe!  
I owe God of this love these lordes has avowed!  
370 Now may less men have leve to say what them likes,  
And have no letting by law; but listenes these woordes:  
I shall be at jornee with gentle knighthes  
On a jambie steed full joltily graithed,  
      *Certainly; now*  
      *if; man; eyes*  
      *venture; eagle-standard*  
      *smash; cut it asunder*  
      *reinforce; field*  
      *formen to go where*  
      *Frisia*

<sup>1</sup> At Lamass (August 1) I shall take my leave, to remain freely / In Lorraine or Lombardy, whichever seems preferable to me.

<sup>2</sup> Unless he (the eagle) is quickly rescued by vigorous knighthes

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

	Ere any journee begin to joust with himselfen <sup>1</sup>	
375	Among all his gigantes, Genivers and other, Strike him stilly fro his steed with strenghe of mine handes,	giantx, Genoese stowly from
	For all the sterren in stour that in his stale hoves <sup>2</sup>	
	Be my retinuse arrayed, I rock it but a little To make route into Rome with riotous knyghtes.	rockon
380	Within a seven-night day, with six score helmes, <sup>3</sup> I shall be seen on the se, sail when thee likes."	see
	Then laughes Sir Lot and all on loud meles:	speaks for
	"Me likes that Sir Lucius longes after soerow;	desire; sorrow
	Now he wilnes the war his wandreth begins;	fares to avenge
385	It is our werdes to wreke the wrath of our elders!	image of Veronica
	I make mine avow to God and to the holy vernacle:	
	And I may see the Romans that are so rich holden, <sup>4</sup>	
	Arrayed in their riones on a round field,	
	I shall at the reverence of the Round Table	for
390	Ride through all the rost, rearward and other, <sup>5</sup> Redy wayes to make and reakes full rowm, Ransand on red blood, as my steed rashes!	Running with route path; dead left
	He that followes my fare and first comes after Shall fied in my fare-way many fey leved!"	
395	Then the conqueror kindly comforts these knyghtes, Allowes them gretly their lordly avowes,	Praises; vowe
	"Allweland God worship you all!	All-ruling; honor
	And let me never want you, whiles I in world regn;	be without you
	My meskan and my manched ye maintan in erthe,	honor; manhood
400	Mise honour all utterly in other kinges landes;	

<sup>1</sup> Before any day's fight (the major battle) begins, to joust with himself (Lucius)

<sup>2</sup> Despite the strong (stars) in battle that remain in his troop

<sup>3</sup> Within a week from today with one hundred and twenty knyghts

<sup>4</sup> If I can see the Romans, who are considered so powerful, / Arrayed in their riotous groups on a broad field.

<sup>5</sup> Ride through all the company, rear guard and the rest; / To make a ready way and paths full spacious

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

	My wele and my worship of all this world rich, Ye have knightly conquered that to my crown longes. Him that be feed for no foes that swilk a folk ledes, But ever fresh for to fight in feld when him likes.	prosperity belongs <i>He needs be afraid; such</i> <i>field</i>
405	I account no king that under Crist lives; Whiles I see you all sound, I set by no more."	<i>take account of</i> <i>depend on</i>
	When they trustily had treed they trumped up after. <sup>1</sup> Descended down with a daunce of dakes and cries. Then they scimbled to tale and soaped als swithe,	group (dancer); early met; hall; dined quickly
410	All this seemly sorte, with semblaunt full noble. Then the roy real rebetes these knighthes With reverence and riot of all his Round Table Til seven dayes was gone. The senatour askes	company; splendor royal king regales respect; revelry
	Answer to the Emperour with austere wordes.	<i>bold</i>
415	After the Epiphany, when the purpose was taken Of peores of the parliament, peclates and other, The king in his counsel, coartain and noble, Utters the alienes and answerts himselfen:	January 6 parliament courteous <i>Brings out</i> <i>conceal</i>
	"Greet well Lucius, thy lord, and laine not these wordes;	
420	If thou be legemen lede, let him wite soon I shall at Lamass take leve and lode at my large In delite in his landes with leedes ynow, Regne in my realtee and rest when me likes;	Siege-man loyal; know August 1; freely delight; many lands <i>Raign; royalty</i>
	By the river of Rhone hold my Round Table,	
425	Fang the formes in faith of all the fair rowmes <sup>2</sup> For all the menace of his might and magree his eyas!	
	And merk sithen over the mountes into his main landes,	go; mountains
	To Miloine the marvelous and mine down the walles;	Milan; undermine
	In Lorraine ne in Lombardy leve shall I neither	Lombardy; leave; neither
430	Nokine lede upon life that there his lawes yemes; And turn into Tuscany when me time thinkes, Ride all those rowm landes with riotous knighthes.	No kind of man; keeps <i>Tuscany</i> spacious; vigorous

<sup>1</sup> When they had confidently discussed (this business), they blew on trumpets afterwards (conclusion of the council).

<sup>2</sup> Seize the revenues, in faith, of all those fair realms, / Despite the threat of his power and regardless of his resistance.

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

	Bid him make rescues for mensk of himselfen,	Honor
	And meet me for his manhood in those main landes!	manhood; strong
435	I shall be founden in Fraunce, frant when him likes!	by
	The first day of Feveryer in those fair marches!	February
	Ere I be fetched with force or forfeit my landes,	dead; left
	The flowr of his fair folk full fey shall be leved!	certainly; seal
	I shall him sekely ensare under my sele rich	brieg; city
440	To sege the citee of Rome within sevē winter	secrētly besiege; all sides
	And that so sekely easēge upon sevē halves	alone
	That many a senator shall sigh for sake of me one!	provided
	My summons are certified and thou art full served	
	Of condit and credens; kaire where thee likes. <sup>1</sup>	
445	I shall thy journee engist, enjoin them myselfes. <sup>2</sup>	from
	Fro this place to the port there thou shall pass over:	at a maximum time
	Seven days to Sandwich I set at the large;	
	Sixty mile on a day, the sum is but little!	
	Thou mosse speed at the spurs and spare not thy fole;	must; foul
450	Thou weedes by Watling Street and by no way elles;	travel; else
	There thou nyghes on night needes mosse thou lenge; <sup>3</sup>	field; go
	Be it forest or feld, found thou no farther;	horse; bush
	Bind thy blonk by a bask with thy bridle even,	
	Lodge thyselfen under linde as thee lefe thinkes; <sup>4</sup>	
455	There owes none alienes to ayer upon nighthes,	ought; wonder
	With such a ribawdous rost to riot thyselfen.	ribald; company
	Thy license is limit in presence of lordes,	limited
	Be now bothe or bette, right as thee thinkes, <sup>5</sup>	
	For both thy life and thy lims ligges therupon,	lend for
460	Though Sir Lucius had laid thee the lordship of Rome,	laid on you
	For be thou foonden a foot withouthe the flood marches	edge of the sea
	After the aughtende day when sunnen is rungen,	eighteenth; nine a.m.

<sup>1</sup> With safe-conduct and credentials; go where you please

<sup>2</sup> I shall assign the resting-places for your journey, order them myself

<sup>3</sup> Wherever you set down by night you must by necessity remain

<sup>4</sup> Lodge yourself under trees, whatever it seems good to you

<sup>5</sup> Whether (my order) is now hateful or a hindrance in your mind

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- Thou shall be hevoded in hic and with horse drawes,<sup>1</sup>  
And soon hieley be hanged, horndes to gnawen!
- 465 The rest ac red gold that unto Rome longes  
Shall not readily, renk, ransom thine one!"
- "Sir," says the senatour, "so Crist mot me help,  
Might I with worship win away ones  
I sholde never for Emperour that on erthe lenges  
Eft unto Arthur ayer on such needes;  
But I am singely here with sixteen knyghtes.  
I besoek you, sir, that we may sound pass.  
If any unlawfule lede let us by the way,  
Within thy license, lord, thy los is impaired."
- 475 "Care not," quod the king; "thy cundit is knownes  
Fro Carlisle to the coste there thy cogge lenges;  
Though thy colters were full, crammed with silver,  
Thou might be seker of my sele sixty mile further."
- They inclined to the king and congee they asked,  
Kaires out of Carlisle, catches on their horses;  
Sir Cador the courtous kend them the wayes,  
To Catrik them conveyed and to Crist them bekenned.  
So they sped at the sparses they sprangen their horses,  
Hines them huckenayes hastily thereafter.
- 485 So for reddour they ridden and rested them never,  
Bet yif they lodged under lide whiles them the light failed;  
Bet ever the senatour forsooth sought at the gainest.  
By the sevende day was gone the citee they roched.  
Of all the gree under God so glad were they never
- 490 As of the sound of the se and Sandwich belles.  
Withouten more stunting they shipped their horses;  
Wery to the wan se they went all at ones.  
With the men of the wale they weighted up their ankers  
And fled at the fore flood; in Flauanders they rowed
- ax; belong  
man, ransom you alone
- at; may  
Could; go  
should; remains  
Again; go; a message  
singly  
beneath; safety  
man kinder  
fame is impaired
- said; safe conduct  
From; coast; ship
- seaway; seal
- bowed; brave  
Go  
courtous; night  
extracted  
exhausted  
horror
- fear; rode  
Unless; tree  
nearest (way)  
By (the time)
- sea; earfew  
delay
- Weary; pale sea  
gunwale; anchors  
first high tide; to

<sup>1</sup> You shall be speedily beheaded and torn apart by horses, / And then quickly hanged for dogs to gnaw.

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

495	And through Flaunders they found, as them fair thought, Til Aachen in Almaine, in Arthur landes; Gos by Mount Godward fell grevous wayes, And so into Lambardy, likand to shew.	www To; Germany They go; grievous pleasant to be seen Tuscany
500	They turn through Tuscany with townes full high; In pris appareilles them in precious weodes. <sup>1</sup>	Sunday; Satir; rest
	The Sonday in Satir they sajourn their horses And seekes the saintes of Rome by aseant of knighthes;	spur; palace; gauis
	Sithen prikes to the palais with portes so rich, There Sir Lucius lenges with lordes ynow;	Where; many lords
505	Loutes to him lovely and leutes him bedes Of credas enclosed with knighthlich weodes.	Bows; properly; offers credentials; knightly
	Then the Emperour was eger and enkerly fraines;	eager; ardently asks immediately
	The answer of Arthur he askes him soon,	orders the realm
	How he arrayes the newm and newles the pople,	If
510	Yif he be rebel to Rome, what right that he claimes;	mad; above
	"Thou sholdie his sceptre have sesed and sitten aboven For reverence and realtee of Rome the noble;	royalty
	By certes thou was my sandes and scaatour of Rome, He sholdie for solempnitez have served thee himselfen."	Because; messenger decorum
515	"That will he never for no wyc of all this world rich But who may win him of war, by wightness of handes;	man
	Many fey shall be first upon the feld leved,	Except; strength
	Ere he appere in this place, proffer when thee likes.	dead; left
	I say thee, sir, Arthur is thine enemy forever,	appears
520	And entis to be overling of the empire of Rome, That all his ancesstres ought but Uter himselfen.	tell you; enemy
	Thy needes in this New Yere I notified myselfes	ancestor; overlord
	Before that noble of name and nine sum of knighthes;	owned; except
	In the most real place of the Round Table	message; made known
525	I summond him solemnly on secand his knighthes; <sup>2</sup>	nine in all
	Since I was formed, in faith, so feyd was I never,	royal
	In all the places there I passed of princes on erthe.	Since; born; fearful (afraid) where

<sup>1</sup> They dress themselves worthily in precious clothes

<sup>2</sup> I summoned him solemnly (to appear in Rome) with his knights looking on

Alliterative Morte Arthur

- I wold forsake all my suite of seignoury of Rome  
 Ere I oft to that sovereign were sent on such needs!  
 530 He may be chosen cheftain, chef of all other  
 Both by chaunces of armes and chevalry noble,  
 For wisest and worthyest and wightest of handes.  
 Of all the wyes that I wot in this world rich —  
 The knighthest creature in Crisidom holden  
 535 Of king or of conquerour crowned in erthe,  
 Of countenance, of corage, of cruel lates,  
 The comlyest of knighthood that under Crist lives!  
 He may be spoken in dispens despiser of silver,  
 That no more of gold gives than of grete stones,  
 540 No more of wine than of water that of the well rannes,  
 Ne of welth of this world but worship alone.  
 Such countenance was never knownen in no kith riche  
 As was with this conquerour in his court holden;  
 I counted at this Cristenmass of kinges annointed,  
 545 Hole ten at his table that time with himselfen.  
 He will warray, iwis, he ware yif thee likes;  
 Wage many wight men and watch thy marches,  
 That they be redy in array and at erest founeden,  
 For yif he reche unto Rome, he ransoans it forever.  
 550 I rede thou dress thee therefore and draw no let longer;<sup>1</sup>  
 Be seker of thy soudours and send to the mountes;  
 By the quarter of this yere, and him querit stand,  
 He will wightly in a while on his wayes bie."
- "By Easter," says the Emperour, "I title myselfen  
 555 To houstay in Almaine with armed knighthes;  
 Send frekly into Fraunce, that flower is of newmes;  
 Fondre to feste that freke and forfeit his landes,  
 For I shall set keepers, fell custard and noble,  
 Many giuant of Gene, jousters full good.  
 560 To meet him in the mounnes and martyr his knighthes,  
 Strike them down in straites and stroy them forever.
- following lordship  
 again; onward  
 chieftain; chief  
 strongest  
 men; know  
 considered  
 courage; expressions  
 called in his expenditures  
 wealth; except for  
 country  
 Ten in all  
 make war  
 Pay; borders  
 at the earliest time  
 if; reach  
 sure; mercenaries  
 year, if; health remains  
 steadily; Axones  
 Easter; onward  
 lead a host; Germany  
 boldly  
 Try; freke; man  
 guards; curving  
 Genoa  
 mountains  
 narrow places; destroy

<sup>1</sup> *I advise you to prepare yourself therefore and delay no longer*

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

	There shall upon Goddard a garret be reed <sup>1</sup> That shall be garnishi and keeped with good mea of armes, And a beacon aboven to brin when them likes.	furnished Beacon; burn
565	That none enemy with host shall enter the mountes. There shall on Mount Bernard be belded another, Buked with bannerettes and bachelors noble. <sup>2</sup> In at the portes of Pavia shall no prisce pass Through the perilous places for my pris knyghtes."	enemy built gates excellent
570	Then Sir Lacias loedlich lettres he seades Anon into the Orient with austeren knyghtes Til Ambigazyc and Orcage and Alisandere cok <sup>3</sup> To Inde and to Ermouye, as Eastrates rannes, To Asia and to Afrike, and Europe the large,	bald
575	To Irrizaine and Elamet, and all those oure illes, To Arraby and Egypt, til eries and other That any erthe occupies in those easterne marches Of Damaske and Damiet, and dukes and eries. For drede of his daunger they dressed them soon;	Hircania; Elam; outer isles to eastern countries Damascus; Damietta
580	Of Crete and of Capados the honourable kinges Come at his commanadement cleynly at ones; To Tascary and Turkey when tithinges is comes They turn in by Thebay, tyrauntes full hoge, The flour of the fair folk of Amazonnes landes;	Cappadocia (in Turkey) completely China; ridings Thibet land of the Amazons
585	All that failes on the feld be forfeit forever. Of Babylon and Baldake the burlich knyghtes Bayous with their baronage bides no longer; Of Persie and of Pamphilia and Prester John landes <sup>4</sup> Ech prince with his power appertlich graithed;	are lacking Cairo; Bagdad; mostly Men of Bayous
590	The Sowdan of Sarry assemblies his knyghtes Fro Nilus to Nazareth, numbers full hoge; To Garyere and to Galilee they gader all at ones,	Egypt; openly prepared Sudan; Syria From Nile Gadara; gather; once

<sup>1</sup> A watch-tower shall be raised on Mount Goddard (in the Alps)

<sup>2</sup> Equipped with noble bachelors and bannerets (see note to line 68)

<sup>3</sup> To Ambigazyc and Orcage (Albania?) and Alexandria as well. / To India and to Armenia,  
where the Euphrates runs

<sup>4</sup> From Persia and Pamphilia and Prester John's lands

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- The sowdases that were seker soudeours to Rome; salians; trusty mercenaries  
 They gadered over the Grecenes Sc with grevous wepons,  
 595 In their grete galleys, with glitterande sheldes; glistering shields  
 The King of Cyprus on the se the Sowdan abides; await  
 With all the realcs of Rhodes arrayed with him one; royal (one); alone  
 They sailed with a side wind over the salt strandes; ample  
 Sodenly the Sarazenes, as themself liked; quickly; Saracens  
 600 Craftly at Corneto the kinges are arrived, Corneto  
 Fro the citee of Rome sixty mile large. away  
 By that the Grecenes were graithed, a full grete number, By this time; prepared  
 The mightiest of Macedone, with men of tho marches, those  
 Fullie and Prussia, peasses with other, Apulia; Prussia; haxen  
 605 The lego-men of Lettow with legions ynow. Laga-men; Lithuania  
 Thus they semble in sortes, summes full huge; assemble; companies  
 The sowdases and Sarazenes out of sere landes salars; Saracens; various  
 The Sowdan of Sarre and sixteen kinges Suhar; Syria  
 At the citee of Rome assembled at ones.
- 610 Then ishews the Emperour, armed at rightes innan; completely  
 Arrayed with his Romans upon rich steedes; by fiends  
 Sixty giasntes before, engendered with fendes, warlocks  
 With witches and warlawes, to watchen his teates Anywhere; years  
 Aywere where he wendes winters and yeres.  
 615 Might no blonkes them bere, those busious charles, horses; bear; wild  
 Bat coverd camels of towrs, enclosed in mailis; camels covered with towers  
 He ayeres out with allies, hostes full huge goes  
 Even into Almaine, that Arthur had wonnen, Directly; Germany  
 Rides in by the river and riones himself, goes  
 620 And ayeres with a huge will all those high landes; Westphalia  
 All Westfale by war he winnes as him likes, Danube  
 Drawes in by Databy and dubbes his knighthes Cologne; besieges  
 In the countree of Coloine castelles enages  
 And sejourns that sesoun with Sarazenes ynow.
- 625 At the usas of Hillary Sir Arthur himselfen<sup>1</sup> famous; commanded  
 In his kide counsel commaunde the leedes:

<sup>1</sup> At the Octave of St. Hillary's day (i.e., a week after January 26) Sir Arthur himself

Alliterative Morte Arthure

	"Kaire to your countrees and semble your knyghtes, And keepes me at Constantine, clenlich arrayed, Bides me at Barflete upon the blithe stremes Boldly within boede, with your best bernes; I shall menskfullly you meet in those fair marches."	Go; assemble awak; completely peaceful streams aboard (ships); men honorable
630	He sendes forth sodenly sergauntes of armes To all his mariners in row to arrest him shippes; Within sixteen dayes his fleet was assembled, At Sandwich on the se, sail when him likes.	quickly commandeer
635	In the palais of York a parlement he holdes With all the peers of the rewn, prelates and other; And after the peaching, in presence of lordes, The king in his counsel carpes these wordes:	palace realm preaching speaks
640	"I am in purpose to pass perilous wayes, To kaise with my keen men to conquer yon landes, To outraye mine enmy, yif aventure it shew, <sup>1</sup> That occupies mine heritage, the empire of Rome.	go
645	I set you here a soveraign, assent yif you likes, That is my sib, my sister son; Sir Mordred himselfen Shall be my leutenant, with lordshippes ynow Of all my lele lege-men that my landes yomes."	if brother; sister's son leutenant; enough authority loyal hys-men; possess
650	He carpes to his cosin then, in counsel himself: "I make thee keeper, Sir Knight, of kingrikes many, Warden worshipful to weld all my landes, That I have wonsen of war in this world rich.	says; kinsman guardian; kingdom wield (rule)
655	I will that Waynor, my wife, in worship be holden. That her want no wele ne welth that her likes; Look my kidd casteles be clenlich arrayed, There sho may sujourn herselfe with seemlich bernes;	desire; Guinevere prosperity famous; completely equipped she; fair knight
	Fonde my forestones be fritched, of frenship for ever, <sup>2</sup> That none waray my wild but Waynor herselfen.	

<sup>1</sup> To outrage my enemy, if a chance should appear

<sup>2</sup> See that my forests are enclosed (from poachers), on pain of losing my favor, / That no one be allowed to hunt the game except for Guinevere herself, / And even she is to hunt only at the season when the game are fat enough to be hunted, / So that she will take her pleasure at appropriate times

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- And that in the sesoun when greev is assigned,  
 That sho take her solace in certain times.
- 660 Chausceller ass chamberlain change as thee likes,  
 Auditours and officers, ordain them thyselfes,  
 Both jaroes and judges, and justices of landes;  
 Look thou justly them well that injury workes.  
 If me be destained to die at Drightens will,  
 665 I charge thee my sekour, chef of all other,  
 To minister my móbles for need of my soul  
 To mendinauntes and misesc in mischeval fallen.  
 Take here my testament of tresare fall hage;  
 As I traist upon thee, betray thou me never!
- 670 As thou will answer before the austeren Judge  
 That all this world wily wisce as Him likes.  
 Look that my last will be lely perlourned!  
 Thou has clely the care that to my crown longes  
 Of all my wordles wele and my wife eek;
- 675 Look thou keep thee so clere there be no cause fowden  
 When I to countree come, if Crist will it thole;  
 And thou have grace goodly to govern thyselfen,  
 I shall crowne thee, knight, king with my handes."
- Then Sir Mordred fall mildly meles himselfen,  
 Kneeled to the conquerour and carpes these wordes:  
 "I besoek you, sir, as my sib lord,  
 That ye will for charice chose you another,  
 For if ye put me in this plint, your pople is deceived;  
 685 To present a prince estate my power is simple;  
 When other of war-wisse are worshipped hereafter,  
 Then may I, forsooth, be set but at little.  
 To pass in your presence my purpose is taken  
 And all my perveance appert for my pris knyghtes."
- "Thou art my nevew full ner, my surree of old,  
 690 That I have chastied and chosen, a child of my chamber;  
 For the sibreden of me, foesake not this office;  
 That thou ne work my will, thou wot what it menes."

Now he takes his leue and lenges no longer

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

	At lordes, at lego-men that loves him behinden;	Wif; lover
695	And seen that worthiliche wye went unto chamber For to comfort the queen that in care lenges. Waynor walkly weepand him kisses, Talkes to him tenderly with tees ynow;	then; worthy man weakly weeping tears
	"I may weye the wye that this war moved,	curse; person
700	That warnes me worship of my wedde lord; All my liking of life out of land wendes, And I in langour am left, love ye, forever! Why ne might I, dere love, die in your arms.	denies; wedded pleasure believe
	Ere I this destainy of dole sholde drie by mine ose!"	destiny; suffer; alone
705	"Greve thee not, Gaynor, for Goddes love of heven, Ne glosch not my ganging; it shall to good turn! Thy wandrethes and thy weeping wondres mine here, I may not wise of this wo for all this world riche;	begradge; going sorrow
	I have made a keeper, a knight of thine owen,	depart (turn aside from) guardian; own
710	Overling of Yngland, under thyselfen, And that is Sir Mordred, that thou has mikel praised, Shall be thy dictour, my dere, to do what thee likes."	Overlord much spokesman
	Then he takes his leve at ladies in chamber, Kissed them kindlich and to Crist beteches;	from kindly; extract (them)
715	And then sho swoones full swithe when he his sword asked, Sways in swooning, swelte as sho wolde!	she; requested as if she would die
	He peessed to his palfrey, in presence of lordes, Prikes of the palis with his pris knighthes	hastened Spurs from; palice
	With a real rout of the Round Table,	company
720	Sought toward Sandwich; sho sees him no more.	Wise; she
	There the grete were gadered with galliard knighthes, Garnished on the green feild and graithetiche arrayed;	gathered; jolly drawn up nimbly
	Dukes and douspeeres daintely rides, Eries of Yngland with arches ynow.	high noblemen
725	Shirreves sharply shiftes the commounas, <sup>1</sup>	

<sup>1</sup> Sheriff sharply move the common soldiers about, / Give orders (to their men) before the powerful (men) of the Round Table

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

	Rewles before the rich of the Round Table, Assignes ilk a countree to certain lordes,	<i>the soldiers from each country</i>
	In the south on the se bank sail when them likes, Then barges them buskes and to the bank rowes,	<i>prepare</i>
730	Bringes bloskes on boede and barlich helmes Trusses in tristly trapped steedes,	<i>horses aboard; stately securely; equipped</i>
	Tentes and other toolies, and targes full rich, Cabanes and cloth-sackes and cofferes full noble,	<i>siege-engines; shields Cabin; sacks of clothes</i>
	Hackes and hackencys and horses of armes;	
735	Thus they stow in the stuff of full sterens knighthes.	<i>stern</i>
	When all was shippid that sholdie, they shant no lenger, But unsold them tite, as the tide runnes;	<i>hold back; longer untied; quickly</i>
	Cogges and crayers then crosses their mastes, <sup>1</sup> At the comandaument of the king uncovered at ones;	<i>unfurled (sail)</i>
740	Wightly on the wale they wie up their ankers, <sup>2</sup> By wit of the watermen of the wale ythes.	<i>surging waves</i>
	Frekkes on the forestaune faken their cables In floynes and fercosties and Flemish shippes,	<i>Men; bow coil</i>
	Tim sailes to the top and tarses the luff,	<i>small ship; merchantmen</i>
745	Standes upon steerbord, sternely they songen. The pris shippes of the port proven their deepness,	<i>Pull; bow</i>
	And foundes with full sail over the fawe ythes; Holly withoutes harm they hale in boates,	<i>starboard sternly; sang</i>
	Shipmen sharply shutten their portes, Launches lode upon luff latches their deepes, <sup>3</sup>	<i>rest</i>
750	Lookes to the lode-stern when the light failles, Castes courses by craft when the cloud rises	<i>go; bounding waves</i>
	With the needle and the stone on the night tides. For drede of the dark night they drenched a little	<i>Wholly; haul; boat</i>
755	And all the sterens of the stremc stiken at ones. <sup>4</sup>	<i>shut; portholes</i>
	The king was in a grete cogge with knighthes full many,	<i>North Star</i>
		<i>ship</i>

<sup>1</sup> Large ships and small boats then hoist their sail

<sup>2</sup> Securely on the gunwale they weigh up their anchors

<sup>3</sup> Launch the lead on the luff (the bow) to measure the depth of the water

<sup>4</sup> And all the stern men of the stream (sailors) struck sail at once

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

	In a cabane enclosed, clelich arrayed;	cabin; completely
	Within on a rich bed restes a little,	
	And with the swogh of the se in swefning he fel.	swaying; dreaming
760	Him dremed of a dragon, dredful to behold.	<i>He dreamed</i>
	Come drivand over the deep to drenchen his pople,	driving; drown
	Even walkand out the West landes,	Directly walking
	Wanderand unworthyly over the wale ythes;	Wandering unbecomingly; surging waves
	Both his hed and his hals were holly all over	neck; wholly
765	Ounded of azure, enamelled full fair. <sup>1</sup>	
	His sholders were shaled all in clesse silver	
	Shredde over all the shrimp with shrinkand pointes;	
	His womb and his wings of wonderful hewes,	belly; hues
	In maruelous mailles he mounted full high.	
770	Whom that he touched he was tise forever!	lose
	His feet were flourished all in fine sable	decorated
	And such a venomous flaire flow from his lippes	flame flowed
	The flood of the flawes all on fire seemed!	expouring; flames
	Then come out of the Orient, even him againes, <sup>2</sup>	
775	A black busoun bere above in the cloudes,	
	With ech a paw as a post and paumes full huge	
	With pikes full perilous, all pliand them seemed;	
	Lothen and lothly, lockes and other,	
	All with lutterd legges, lokkerd unfair.	
780	Flittered andrely, with fomand lippes —	
	The foulest of figure that formed was ever!	
	He baleced, he blered, he braundished thereafter;	danced about; grimaced
	To batall he bounces him with busoun claws;	prepares himself; wild
	He rored, he rored, that roggod all the erthe,	beloved; roared; rocked
785	So rudeley he rapped at to riot himselfen! <sup>3</sup>	

<sup>1</sup> Covered with waves of azure, enamelled (colored) very fair; / His shoulders were all covered with scales of pure silver / That clothed the monster with shrinking points (like mail)

<sup>2</sup> Then came out of the East, directly against him, / A wild, black bear above in the clouds, / With each paw as big as a post, and palms very huge, / With very perilous claws that seemed all curling / Hateful and loathly, his hair and the rest, / With legs all bowed, covered with ugly hair / That was charlikly mased, with foaming lips

<sup>3</sup> So violently he stamped on it (the earth) to enjoy himself

Alliterative *Morte Arthur*

	Then the dragon on dregh dressed him agaisnes And with his dutes him drove on dregh by the welken; He fares as a facon, frekly he strikes; Both with feet and with fire he fightes at ones.	finally came against him blows; afar; sky falcon; boldly
790	The bere in the batail the bigger him seemed, And bites him boldly with baleful tuskos; Such batleses he him reches with his brode klokes, His breste and his brayell was bloody all over.	bear reaches to (gives); close breast; waist
795	He ramped so rudeley that all the erthe rives, Runnand on red blood as rain of the heven! He had wertied the worm by wightness of strengthe Ne were it not for the wild fire that he him with defendes.	Running winded; serpent; stoutness himself
	Then wanders the worm away to his heightes, Comes glidand fro the cloudes and coupes full even, Touches him with his talones and teres his rigge, Bewix the taile and the top sea foot large!	serpent strikes directly maw; back long
800	Thus he brittened the bere and brought him o live, Let him fall in the flood, fleet where him likes. So they thring the bold king binne the ship-borde, That ner he bristes for bale on bed where he ligges.	float
	Then waknes the wise king, wery fortravailed, Takes him two philosophers that followed him ever, In the seven science the sutelest founden, The cuntingest of clergy under Crist knowen;	waknes; weary exhausted most subtle most learned of scholars
810	He told them of his torment that time that he sleeped: "Dreched with a dragon and such a derf bestie, Has made me fall wery, as wiise me Our Lord; Ere I mon swelt as swithe, ye tell me my swefen!" <sup>4</sup>	Harrowed; dire beast guide me
	"Sir," said they soon then, these sage philosophers,	immediately; wise

<sup>1</sup> He reared up on his hind legs so rudely that all the earth was shaken

<sup>2</sup> Thus he beat down the bear and killed him

<sup>3</sup> These dreams so oppres the king abord the ship / That he nearly burst for pain on the bed where he lies

<sup>4</sup> Before I must die quickly, interpret my dream for me

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- 815 "The dragon that thou dremed of, so dreadful to shew,  
That come drivand over the deep to drenchen thy pople,  
Soothly and certain thyselfen it is,  
That thus sailes over the se with thy seker knighes.  
The coloures that were casten upon his clere wings  
820 May be thy kingrikes all, that thou has right wondres,  
And the tattered tail, with tonges so hage,  
Betokens this fair folk that is thy fleet wendes.  
The here that brizened was aboven in the cloudes  
Betokenes the tyraunes that tormentes thy pople  
825 Or elles with some giuant some journee shall happens,  
In singular batal by yourselve one;  
And thou shall have the victory, through help of Our Lord,  
As thou in thy vision was openly shewed.  
Of this dreadful drene ne drede thee so more,  
830 Ne care not, sir conquerour, but comfort thyselfes  
And these that sailes over the se with thy seker knighes."
- With trumpes then trially they trusen up their sailes  
And rowes over the rich se, this rout all at once;  
The comly cose of Normandy they catchen full even  
835 And blithely at Barflete these bold are arrived,  
And findes a fleet there of frendes ynow,  
The flowr and the fair folk of fifthea newnes,  
For kinges and capitaines keeped him fair,  
As he at Carlisle commansd at Cristenmass himselfe.
- 840 By they had taken the land and teates up reed,  
Comes a Templar tire and touched to the king;  
"Here is a tyraunt beside that tormentes thy pople,  
A grete giuant of Geese, engendered of fende;  
He has freten of folk mo than five hundred,  
845 And als fele faunekins of free-born childe.<sup>1</sup>  
This has been his sustenaunce all this seven winteres,  
And yet is that sot not sad, so well him it likes?  
In the countree of Constantine no kind has he leved
- dremmed; behold  
driving; drown  
  
mory  
clear (shining)  
kinglome  
tongass  
Signifys  
beaten down  
people  
else; day's fight  
battel; alone  
  
dream
- trumper calls; boldly  
company  
coast; reach  
Barfleur  
  
kinglome  
awarded
- By the time; reared  
quickly; told  
  
Genoa; by fiends  
devoured; more; hundred  
  
royal  
family; left

<sup>1</sup> And as many infants (baptized babies) of noble children

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

850	Withouten kidd castles, enclosed with walles, That he ne has clely distroyed all the knave childer, And them carried to the crag and clely devoured. The duchess of Bechtain today has he taken, Beside Reines as she rode with her rich knyghtes, Led her to the mountain there that lede leages To lie by that lady ay whiles her life lastes.	male children
855	We followed o ferrome mo than five hundreth Of bernes and of barges and bachelors noble, But he covered the crag; she cried so loud The care of that creature cover shall I never	Brittany Rennes; the man from afar procession got to recover
860	Sho was the flower of all Fraunce or of five newnes, And one of the fairest that formed was ever, The gentlest jowell adjudged with lordes Pro Gene unto Gerone by Jesu of heven! Sho was thy wifes cosin, know it if thee likes,	most noble jewel; by Gene; Gerone relative; acknowledge
865	Comes of the richest that regnes in erthe; As thou art rightwise king, rew on thy pople And fondc for to veage them that thus are rebuked!"	reigns righteous; have pity endeavor; avenge
870	"Alas," says Sir Arthur, "so long have I lived! Had I witten of this, well had me cheved. Me is not fallen fair bat me is foul happened That thus this fair lady this fend has destroyed!	known; achieved
875	I had lever than all Fraunce this fifteen winter! I had been before that freke a furlong of way When he that lady had laught and led to the mountes; I had left my life ere sho had harm limped.	foul suffered
880	But wolde thou ken me to that crag there that keen leages, I wolde kait to that come and carp with himselfen, To trete with that tyrant for tresoun of landes And take tress for a time till it may tide better."	show; keen one treach; treason truce; beside
885	"Sir, see ye you foeland with you two fires? There fibnes that fend, fraist when thee likes,	promissory lurk; by

<sup>1</sup> *I would give the revenues of all of France for the past fifteen years / To have been even a furlong from that man*

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- Upon the crest of the crag by a cold well  
 That encloses the cliff with the clere strandes;  
 There may thou find folk Fey withouten number,  
 Mo florines, in faith, than Fraunce is in after,  
 And more treasure untruly that traitour has gotten  
 Than in Troy was, as I trow, that time that it was wonnes."  
 clear (shining) dead More coins dishonestly; gaines believe
- Then romes the rich king for rewth of the pople,  
 Raikes right to a tent and restes no lenger;  
 He welteres, he wrestles, he wringes his handes;  
 There was no wye of this world that wiste what he meased.  
 He callis Sir Kayous that of the cup served  
 And Sir Bedvere the bold that bore his brand rich;  
 "Look ye after even-song be armed at rightes  
 On blonkes by yon buscallie, by yon blithe stremes,  
 For I will pass in pilgrimage privily hercafter,  
 In the time of souper, when lordes are served,  
 For to seeken a saint by yon salt stremes,  
 In Saint Michel mount, there miracles are shewed."  
 bollow; pity Goest; longer writhes; wrestles knew; meant sword completely hornet; brush; calm dinner
- After even-song Sir Arthur himselfe  
 Went to his wardrobe and warp off his weedes  
 Armed him in a aketon with offrayes full rich;  
 Abovea, on that, a jerkin of Acres out OVER.  
 Abovea that a gesseraunt of gestle mailles,  
 A japon of Jerodine jagged in shredes;  
 He beaides on a bacenett burnisht of silver  
 The best that was in Basel, with bordours rich;  
 The crest and the coronal enclosed so fair  
 With clasps of clere gold, couched with stones;  
 The vesor, the avertail, enarm'd so fair,  
 Void withouten vice, with windowes of silver;  
 His gloves gaylich gilt and graven at the hemmes  
 With graines and gobeleins, glorious of hew.  
 He braces a brode sheld and his brand askes,<sup>1</sup>  
 Boused him a brown steed and on the beante hoves;  
 wardrobe; threw; clother padded jacket; gold pins Upon that, a leather jacket coat of mail gipon; shredes draw; helmet borders diadem clear (shining); set visor; face guard; plated Devoid of defects gayly; decorated seed pearls; jewell were to; ground waite

<sup>1</sup> He puts on the arm straps (braces) of a broad shield and asks for his sword

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

He stert til his stirrup and strides on loft,  
leaped; aloft  
Straines him stoutly and stirres him fair,  
Spurs; bush  
Broches the bay steed and to the bush rides,  
awaied  
And there his knyghtes him keepe full clestlich arrayed.

- 920 Then they rode by that river that rannen so swithe,  
swifly  
There the rindes over-reches with reed boughes;  
trees reach over; stately  
The roe and the reindeer reckless there rassan,  
roe deer  
In rases and in rosers to riot themselfen;  
bushes; rose bushes; amase  
The frithes were flourisht with flowres full many,  
woods; flowered  
925 With fascons and fesauttes of ferlich hewes;  
falcons; pheasants; wondrous  
All the fowles there flashes that flies with wings,  
sang; cuckoo; groves  
For there galed the gosk on greves full load;  
all sorts of gladness  
With alkine gladship they gladden themselfen;  
"For I will seek this saint by myselve one  
Of the nightingale notes the noyses was sweet;  
930 They threped with the throstels three hundred at ones!  
debated; thrushes  
That whate swoving of water and singing of birds,  
swift sound  
It might salve him of sore that sound was never!

- Then ferkes this folk and on foot lighties,  
goes  
Fastenes their fair steedes o ferrom between;<sup>1</sup>  
And then the king keasly commaunded his knyghtes  
935 For to bide with their blonkes and boyn no farther;  
horses; go  
"For I will seek this saint by myselve one  
And mele with this master man that this mount yemos,  
speak; possessors  
And seyn shall ye offer, either after other<sup>2</sup>  
940 Menskfullly at Saint Michel, full mighty with Crist."  
Honorable to

- The king covres the crag with cloughes full high,  
gett to; ravines  
To the crest of the cliff he climbs on loft,  
Cast up his umbrere and keenly he lookes,  
visitor  
Caught of the cold wind to comfort himselfen.  
945 Two fires he findes flamand full high;  
The fourtenele a farlong between them he walkes;  
The way by the well-strandes he wonderd him one  
quarter to  
welling water

<sup>1</sup> They tie their horses with a good distance between them

<sup>2</sup> And afterwards you shall make your offerings, each after the other

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

	To wite of the warlaw, where that he leuges. He ferkes to the first fire and even there he findes A wery woful widow wringand her handes, And gretand on a grave grisly teres, New merked on molde, senn mid-day it seemed. He salued that sorrowful with sittand wordes And fraines after the dead fairly thereafter.	lawn; warlock; dwelt goes weeping Newly dug in the earth saluted; fitting ask; friend
950		woman unhappily
955	Then this woful wife unwisly him greetes, Coverd up on her knees and clapped her handes, Said: "Careful, caeeman, thou carpes too loud! May yon warlaw wife, he warrys us all! Weryd worth the wight ay that thee thy wit reved, That mas thee to waife here in these wild lakes! I warn thee, for worship, thou wilnes after sorrow! Whider bakes thou, berne? unblessed thou seemes! Weenes thou to britten him with thy beand rich? Were thou wighter than Wade or Wawain either, Thou winnes no worship, I warn thee before. Thos sained thee unsekerly to seek to these mountes; <sup>1</sup> Such six were too simple to semble with him one, For, and thou see him with sight, thee serves no berne To saine thee sekerly, so seemes him huge.	man warlock know; attacks Cursed be; man; stole makes; wonder desire Whither go Expect; destroy; reward fiercer
960		
965		
970	Thos art frosty and fair and in thy first floweres, But thos art fey, by my faith, and that me forthinkes! Were such fifty on a feld or on a fair erthe, The freke wolde with his fist fell you at ones. Lo! Here the duchess dore — today was sho taken — Deep dolven and dode, diked in moldes. He had murdered this mild by mid-day were rungen. <sup>2</sup> Withoutes mercy on molde, I not what it meat; He has forcoed her and filid and sho is fey leved; He slew her unslely and slit her to the navel.	noble fated to die; grieves fifty such (as you) man dear buried; buried; ground ground; knew not; means raped; defiled; left dead crudely
975		

<sup>1</sup> You crossed yourself unsekerly (started out wrong) to go to these mountains; / Sir such as you would be too weak to attack him alone, / For, if you see him with sight (of your eyes), you will not have the heart / To cross yourself securely, so huge does he seem

<sup>2</sup> He had murdered this mild one by the time that midday (bell) was rung

Alliterative Morte Arthure

- 980 And here have I baumied her and buried thereafter.  
For bale of the bootless, blithe be I never!  
Of all the frendes sho had there followed nose after  
But I, her foster moder, of fifteen winter.  
To ferke off this forland sondé shall I never,  
985 But here be founden on feld til I be fey leved."
- Then answers Sir Arthur to that old wife:  
"I am comes fro the conquerour, courtais and gentle,  
As one of the hathelst of Arthure knighthes,  
Messenger to this mis, for mendement of the pople  
990 To mele with this master man that here this monte yenses,  
To trese with this tyrant for treasure of landes  
And take trew for a time, to better may worthe."
- "Ya, thir wordes are but waste," quod this wife then,  
"For both landes and lythes full little by he settes;  
Of rentes ne of red gold rockes he never,  
For he will lenge out of law, as himself thinkes,  
Withouten license of lode, as lord is his own.  
But he has a kirtle on, keeped for himself,  
That was spunnen in Spain with special birdes  
1000 And sitten garnisht in Greece full graithely togoders;  
It is hided all with here, holly all over  
And borderd with the berdes of burlich kinges,  
Crisped and combed that kempes may know  
Ich king by his colour, in kith there he lences.  
1005 Here the fermes he fanges of fiboca newmes,  
For ilke Easter eves, however that it fall,  
They send it him soothly for saught of the pople,  
Sekerly at that sesoun with certain knighthes,  
And he has asked Arthure all this seven winter;  
1010 Forthby hordes he here to outraye his pople  
Til the Britones king have burnisht his lippos  
And sent his berde to that bold with his best berdes;  
But thou have brought that berde boun thee no further,
- embalmed  
sorrow; the helpeless  
mother  
go; promontory; endeavor  
woman  
most manly  
dung; amendment  
speak; possess  
truce; until; be  
these; woman  
nations he thinks little of  
reckons  
live outside the law  
prince; own (right)  
grown  
by maidens  
new; readily  
covered; hair; wholly  
beards; manly  
Curled; warriors  
Each; country  
newmen; slaves  
Easter Eve  
peace  
asked for Arthur's (beard)  
Therefore dwelle; outrage  
i.e., shaved

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

1015	For it is a bootless hale thou biddes ought elles, <sup>1</sup> For he has more treasore to take when him likes Than ever ought Arthur or any of his elders.	owned will be
1020	If thou have brought the berde he bes more blithe Than thou gave him Borgoyn or Britain the More; But look now, for charitee, thou chasty thy lippes	Burgundy; Great Britain discipline (close)
1025	That thee no wordes escape, whatso betides. Look thy present be prest and peess him bat little, For he is at his souper; he will be soon greved.	swift dinner; easily annoyed
1030	And thou my counsel do, thou dos off thy clothes And kneel in thy kirtle and call him thy lord.	If; take; i.e., armor gown
1035	He soupes all this sesoun with seven knave childer, Chopped in a chargeur of chalk-white silver, With pickle and powder of precious spices, And pimeat full plenteous of Portingale wines;	dishes; on; male children serving dish spiced wine; Portuguese
1040	Three halefull birdes his beoches they turn, That bides his bedgant, his bidding to work; Such four sholde be fey within four hours Ere his filth were filled that his flesh yernes."	sad maidens; spits bedtime; do dead satisfied; yearns
1045	"Ya, I have brought the berde," quod he, "the better me likes; Forthy will I bous me and bere it myselfen But, lefe, woldē thou lese me where that lede lenges? I shall alow thee, and I live. Our Leed so me help!"	go; bear dear; much; man praise thou if
1050	"Perk fast to the fire," quod she, "that flames so high; There fillies that fend him, fraist when thee likes. <sup>2</sup> But thou mōte seek more sooth, sidlings a little, For he will have soest himself six mile large."	Go go; sidewise away
1055	To the source of the rock he sought at the gainest, Sained him sekerty with certain wordes, And sidlings of the segge the sight had he reched; How unseemly that set sat suspand him one!	smoke; went; quicker Crossed himself sidewise; man; reached dining alone
1060	He lay lenand on long, lodgand unfair,	wrenched out; lodging

<sup>1</sup> For it will be a sorrow without remedy if you offer him anything else

<sup>2</sup> There that fand fillis himself to try when you please

Alliterative Morte Arthure

	The thee of a mans tmes lift up by the haunch;	high; <i>haeb</i>
	His back and his beuchers and his brode lentes	<i>bucoclic; lenes</i>
	He bakes at the bale-fire and breckless him seemed;	warm; without <i>trousers</i>
	There were rostes full rude and rewful beodes,	<i>rostis; roast meat</i>
1050	Bernes and bestall broched togeders,	<i>Men; beans spiced</i>
	Cowle full crammed of crimed childer,	<i>Tub; baptised children</i>
	Some as bred broched and birdes them turned.	<i>roasts spiced; maidens</i>
	And then this comlich king, because of his pople,	comely
	His herte bleedes for bale on beate where he standes;	pain; ground
1055	Then he dressed on his shield, shantes no lenger,	bolds back no longer
	Braundisht his brode sword by the bright hiltes,	<i>Ruster; man</i>
	Raikes toward that reesk right with a rude will	<i>hastily greets; proud</i>
	And hically hailses that hulk with hautain wordes:	<i>All-ruling; honor</i>
	"Now, All-weland God that worshippes us all	<i>grief; for</i>
1060	Give thee sorrow and site, set, there thou ligges,	<i>foulest man</i>
	For the folsomest freke that formed was ever!	<i>cooking; chart; word</i>
	Fosilly thou feedes thee! The Fead have thy soul!	<i>Chaff</i>
	Here is cury uncleane, carl, by my trewth,	<i>baptised children</i>
	Caff of creatures all, thou cursed wretch!	
1065	Because that thou killed has these crimed childer,	
	Thou has martyrs made and brought out of life	
	That here are broched on beate and brittened with thy handes. <sup>1</sup>	<i>asige; reward; deserved</i>
	I shall merk thee thy meed as thou has much served,	<i>possesses</i>
	Through might of Saint Michel that this mount yemos!	
1070	And for this fair lady that thou has Fey loved	<i>As</i>
	And thus forced on folde for filth of thyselfen,	<i>raped; earth</i>
	Dress thee now, dog-son, the devil have thy soul!	<i>Prepare yourself</i>
	For thou shall die this day through dist of my handes!"	
	Then glopinised the glutton and glored unfair;	was terrified; glazed
1075	He gressed as a grayhound with grisly taskes,	<i>snarled (grinned)</i>
	He gaped, he groaned fast with grouchand late	<i>groaned; grudging expressions</i>
	For gref of the good king that him with grame greeves,	<i>anger</i>
	His fax and his foeclop was filtered togeders	<i>hair; forelock; matted</i>
	And out of his face fom as half foot large;	<i>foam; long</i>

<sup>1</sup> Those who are roasted on spits in the field and broken with your hands

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

1080	His front and his forheved, all was it over As the fell of a frost, and frakned it seemed, Hook-nedbed as a hawk, and a hore berde, And hered to the eyen-holes with hangand browes; Harsk as a hound-fish, hardly who-so lookes,	face; forehead skin; frog; freckled hook-nosed; gray (hoary) haired; eye-holes Harsh; intently
1085	So was the hide of that hulk holly all over; Erse had he full hage and ugly to shew With eyen full horrible and ardant for sooth; Flat-mouthed as a fluke with flerland lippes, And the flesh in his face-teeth foaly as a bere;	wholly Ear; be seen eyes; flaming flounder; swarming foul; bear fierce
1090	His berde was brothy and blak that til his breste seched; Grassed as a mere-swine with carkes full hage And all faltered the flesh in his foul lippes, like wrethe as a wolf-heved it wrath ost at ones! <sup>1</sup> Bull-necked was that berne and brode in the shoulders,	Fat; dolphin; carcass quivered
1095	Brok-breasted as a brawn with bristles full large, Rude armes as an oke with ruskled sides, Lynn and leskes full lothen, leve ye for sooth; <sup>2</sup> Shovel-footed was that shalk and shaland him seemed, With shankles unshapely shovand togoders;	Spotted-breasted; boar oak; wrinkled man; bow-legged shoving (i.e., knock-down)
1100	Thick thees as a thurse and thicker in the haunch, Greves-grownen as a galt, full grillich he lookes! Who the lenghe of the lede lely accountes, Fro the face to the foot was five fadom long!	thigh; giant Fat; pig; horrible length; man carefully fathoms
1105	Thea sterdes he up sturdily on two stiff shankles, And soon he caught him a club all of cleane iron; He wolde have killed the king with his keen wepen, But through the craft of Crist yet the carl failed; The crest and the coronal, the clasps of silver, Clenly with his club he crashed down at ones!	legs force weapon carl diadem
1110	The king castes up his sheld and covers him fair, And with his burlich brand a box he him reches; Full butt in the front the fromand he hittes	stays; reaches to him face; enemy

<sup>1</sup> Each fold (in the quivering skin of his lips) at once twisted our like the head of a wolf

<sup>2</sup> Loun and lois very loathesone, believe you, truly

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- That the bursicht blade to the brain runnes;  
He seyed his fynamie with his foul handes  
1115 And frappes fast at his face fersly there-afier!  
The king changes his foot, eschewes a little;  
Ne had he eschaped that chop, cheved had evil;  
He follows in fersly and fastenes a dist  
High up on the haunch with his hard wepen  
1120 That he helde the sword half a foot large;  
The hot blood of the hulk unto the hilt runnes;  
Even into the in-mete the giasant he hittes  
Just to the genitalis and jagged them in sonder!
- wiped; face  
strikes; Arthur's; fiercely  
nevaran  
escaped; achieved (won)  
fersly; strikes a blow  
weapon  
buried; deep  
in-meat (intestines)  
Right up to; cut; under
- Then he rored and rored and rudely he strikis  
1125 Full eagerly at Arthur and on the erthe himes;  
A swerd-lenghe within the swarth he swappes at ones  
That ner swoones the king for swough of his distes!  
But yet the king swepurly full swithe he besweakes,  
Swappes in with the sword that it the swang bristed;  
1130 Both the guttes and the gore gushes out at ones.  
That all englaimes the grass on ground there he standes!
- bellowed; roared  
eagerly  
ground; strikes  
sound  
swifly; quickly; works  
Strikes; looks burnt  
makes slimy
- Then he castes the club and the king hentes;  
On the crest of the crag he caught him in armes,  
And encloses him clently to crushes his ribbes;  
1135 So hard holdes he that hende that ner his herne bristes!  
Then the baleful birdes boanes to the erthe,  
Kneeland and cryand and clapped their handes;  
"Crist comfort you knight and keep him fro sorrow,  
And let never you fendl fell him o life!"
- throws away; seizes  
noble; burns  
sad maidens fall  
clashed  
friend; kill him
- 1140 Yet is that warlaw so wight he welters him under;  
Wrothly they writhen and weestle togeders,  
Welters and wallows over within those buskes,  
Tumbelles and turns fast and teres their weedes,  
Untenderly fro the top they tilten togeders,  
1145 Whilom Arthur over and other while under,  
Fro the heghe of the hill unto the hard rock,  
They feyne never eft they fall at the flood marches;  
But Arthur with an anlace eagerly smites
- warlock; rolls  
buskes  
Tumble; tear; clothes  
topple  
At times  
height  
dagger

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- 1150 And hittes ever in the hulk up to the hiltes.  
The thef at the ded-throwes so throly him thringes<sup>1</sup>  
That three ribbes in his side he thrasses in sonder!
- Then Sir Kayous the keen unto the king sterdes,  
Said: "Alas! We are torn! My lord is confounded,  
Over-fallen with a fende! Us is foyl happed!  
1155 We mon be forfeited, in faith, and flamed forever!"
- They heve up his hawberk then and handilles there-under  
His hide and his haunch eek on height to the shoulders,  
His flank and his fellettes and his fair sides,  
Both his back and his breste and his bright armes.
- 1160 They were fain that they fande no flesh entamed  
And for that journee made joy, thir gentle knyghtes.
- "Now certes," says Sir Bedwere, "it seemes, by my Lord,  
He seekes saintes but selden, the sorer he gripes,  
That thus clickes this corsaint out of thir high clifffes,  
1165 To carry forth such a carl at close him in silver;  
By Michel, of such a mak I have much wonder  
That ever our sovereign Lord suffers him in heven!  
And all saintes be such that serves our Lord  
I shall never no saint be, by my fader soul!"
- 1170 Then bouedes the bold king at Bedwere woddes:  
"This saint have I sought, so help me our Lord!  
Forthy braid out thy beand and broche him to the heric;  
Be seker of this sergeant; he has me sore greved!  
I fought not with such a freke this fifteen winter;
- 1175 But in the mountes of Araby I met such another;  
He was forcier by fer that had I neve founden;<sup>2</sup>  
Ne had my fortvane been fair, fey had I leved!  
Anon strike off his heved and stake it thereafter;<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> In his death throwes the thief squeezes him so fiercely

<sup>2</sup> He was stronger by far than any I had ever found

<sup>3</sup> Quickly strike off his head and put it on a stake thereafter

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- Give it to thy squire, for he is well horsed,  
squire  
1180 Bare it to Sir Howell that is in hard bondes  
bonds of sorrow  
And bid him berse him well; his enemy is destroyed!  
hearter; enemy  
Send berse it to Barfleur and brace it in iron  
Barfleur  
And set it on the barbican bernes to shew,  
mais-gate tower  
My brand and my brode shield upon the beane ligges,  
ground lie  
1185 On the crest of the crag there first we encountered,  
Peninsula of Cotesain  
And the club there-by, all of clene iron.  
Go; promontory; weapon  
That many Cristen has killed in Constantine landes;  
Let us go  
Ferk to the fore-land and fetch me that wopen  
war; weapon  
And let found to our fleet in flood there it lenges.  
gown; else  
1190 If thou will any treasure, take what thee likes;  
Have I the kirtle and the club, I covet nought elles."
- Now they kaire to the crag, these comlich knyghtes,  
comely  
And brought him the brode shield and his bright wopen,  
The club and the cose als, Sir Kayoss himselfes.<sup>1</sup>  
1195 And kaires with the conquerour the kynges to shew.  
Yet  
That in covert the kyng held close to himselfen  
While clene day fro the cloud climbed on loft.
- By that to court was comen clamour fell hage,  
By that time  
1200 And before the comlich kyng they kneeled all at ones:  
Hage  
"Welcome, our lege lord, to long has thou dwelled!"  
most active  
Governoour under God, graithest and noble,  
To whom grace is graunted and given at His will  
Now thy comly come has comforted us all!  
coming  
Thou has in thy realtee revenged thy pople!  
royalty  
1205 Through help of thy hand thine enemys are stroyed,  
destroyed  
That has thy renkes over-run and left them their childer;  
brefit  
Was never newm out of array so redily relieved!"  
disorderd realm; refured
- Then the conquerour Cristesly carpes to his pople:  
Christians  
"Thankes God," quod he, "of this grace and no gome elles,  
man  
1210 For it was never mannes deed, but might of Himeselven  
Or miracle of his Moder, that mild is till all!"

<sup>1</sup> Sir Kay himself brings the club and the coat as well

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- He summond then the shippmen sharply thereafter,  
To shake forth with the shire-men to shift the goodes:  
"All the much treasure that traitour had wosten  
1215 To commons of the countree, clergy and other,  
Look it be done and delt to my dere pople  
That none plain of their part o pain of your lives."  
go; men of the shire  
dealt out  
complain; on
- He comandaide his cosin, with knyghtlich wordes,  
To make a kirk on that crag, there the corse ligges  
1220 And a covent there-in, Crist fot to serve,  
In mind of that martyr that in the mount rewest.  
commanded  
church; body  
monastery  
memory; i.e., the duchess
- When Sir Arthur the king had killed the gauast,  
Then blithely fro Barflete he buskes on the morn,  
With his bataill on brede by the blithe stremes:<sup>1</sup>  
1225 Toward Castel Blank he cheses him the way,  
Through a fair champain under chalk hilles;  
The king fraistes a furth over the fresh strandes,  
Foundes with his fair folk over as him likes;  
Forth steppes that sterren and strokis his tests  
1230 On a strenghe by a streme, in thos strait landes.  
goes  
chooser (i.e., goes)  
open plain  
seeks; ford  
goes  
morn (over); stretches out  
strong-hold; narrow
- Anon after mid-day, in the mene-while,  
There comes two messengers of tho for marches,  
Fro the Marshal of Fraunce, and menyskfull him greetes,  
1235 Besought him of succour and said him these wordes:  
"Sir, thy Marshal, thy minister, thy mercy beseekes,  
Of thy mikle mageste, for mendment of thy pople,  
Of these marches-men that thus are miscarried  
And thus marred among maugree their eyen;  
I witter thee the Emperor is entred into Fraunce  
1240 With hostes of enemis, horrible and huge;  
Brinnes in Burgoyne thy burges so rich,  
And britenes thy baronage that beldes there-in;  
He encroches keenly by craftes of armes  
Countrees and castles that to thy crowne longes.  
meanwhile  
from those far  
honorsly  
Commander-in-chief  
great majesty; amendment  
men of the marches  
harmed in spite of  
emper
- Burns; Burgundy; cities  
beats down; dwells  
invades  
belong

<sup>1</sup> *With his battalions spread out by those calm streams*

Alliterative Morte Arthur

1245	Confoundes thy commoans, clergy and other; But thou comfort them, Sir King, cover shall they never! He felles foresses fele, forrays thy landes, Frithes no fraunches, but frayes the pople;	Destroy; citizens Unless; recover many; plunder Spares; liberty; affrights
1250	Thus he felles thy folk and fanges their goodes; Fremedly the French tongue fey is beleved. <sup>1</sup> He drawes into douce Fraunce, as Dutch-men telles, Dressed with his dragons, deadful to shew;	slays; seizes sweet; Germans
	All so dede they dight with dimes of swordes, Dukes and douspeeres that deeches there-in;	death; put sick
1255	Forthy the lordes of the land, ladies and other, Prayes thee for Petere love, the apostle of Rome, Sean thou art presest in place, that thou will proffer make To that perilous prince by process of time.	i.e., make war Against goes
1260	He ayers by yon hilles, yon high holtes under, Hoves there with hole streaghe of hethen knighthes; Help now for His love that high in heven sittes And talk tristly to them that thus us destroyes!"	Waite; force boldly
	The king biddes Sir Bois: "Bask thee belive! Take with thee Sir Berille and Bedvere the rich,	Go; quickly
1265	Sir Gawain and Sir Grime, these galliard knighthes, And graith you to yon green woodes and gos on thir needes; Says to Sir Lecius too unlordly he workes Thus bitherly againes law to lode my pople;	jolly do this errand wickedly; treat
	I let him ece ought long, yif me the life happen. <sup>2</sup>	
1270	Or many light shall low that him over land follows; Commaund him keenly with cruel woordes Kaire out of my kingrik with his kidd knighthes; In case that he will not, that cursed wretch,	Go; kingdom courtesy; encounter
1275	Come for his courtaisy and counter me ones; Then shall we reckon full rathe what right that he claimes, Thus to riot this rewm and ransoun the pople! There shall it derely be delt with dimes of handes;	quickly ravage dearly; dealt Lord; deal
	The Drighten at Doomesday deie as Him likes!"	

<sup>1</sup> By foreigners the French tongue is destroyed

<sup>2</sup> I shall stop him before much longer if life is granted to me (if I live)

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- Now they graith them to go, these galiard knyghtes.  
 1280 All glimerand in gold, upon grete steedes  
 Toward the green wood, with grouden wepes,  
 To greet well the grete lord that wolde be greved soon.
- These hende hoves on a hill by the holt eves<sup>1</sup>  
 Beheld the housing full high of hethen knyghtes.  
 1285 They herde in their herberage hundredthes full many  
 Hornes of clyfanies full highlich blowen;  
 Palaises proudly pight, that paled were rich<sup>2</sup>  
 Of pall and of purpure, with precios stones;  
 Pensels and pomells of rich princes armes  
 1290 Pight in the plain mede the people to shew.  
 And then the Romans so rich had arrayed their testes  
 On row by the river under the round billes,  
 The Emperour for honour even in the middes,  
 With egles all over cancellid so fair;  
 1295 And saw him and the Sowdai and senatoars many  
 Seck toward a sale with sixteen knyghtes  
 Syland softly in, sweetly by themselven,  
 To sospe with that soverain full selcouthe metes.
- Now they wend over the water, these worshipful knyghtes,  
 1300 Through the wood to the wonne there the wyces restes;  
 Right as they had weshen and went to the table,  
 Sir Wawain the worthy unwisly he spekes:  
 "The might and the majestee that memkes us all,  
 That was merked and made through the might of Himeself,  
 1305 Give you site in your sete, Sowdan and other,  
 That here are semblid in sale; unsaught mot ye worthel!  
 And the false heretik that Emperour him callis,  
 That occupies in emroure the Empire of Rome,  
 Sir Arthure heritage, that honorable king  
 1310 That all his avncestres ought but Uter him one,

*prepare; jolly*

*sharpened*

*noble; heathen*

*dwellings*

*elephant; loudly*

*pennons; anti-pennons*

*Placed; meadow*

*exactly*

*eagles; decorated*

*Sultan*

*Go; hall*

*Gilding*

*dine; rare foods*

*dwelling*

*washed*

*unfriendly; speaks*

*honors*

*formed*

*grief; seal*

*hall; troubled; be*

*ancestors owned*

<sup>1</sup> These courteous ones wait on a hill by the edge of the wood

<sup>2</sup> Palaces (rich nests) proudly pitched, / That had rich walls of silk and purple cloth adorned with precious stones

Alliterative *Morte Arthure*

- That like curving that Cain caught for his brother  
 Cleave on thee, cuckewald, with crown there thou lenges,  
 For the unloedliest lede that I on looked ever!  
 My lord marvels him mikel, man, by my trewth,  
 1315 Why thou martheres his men that no misse serves,  
 Commons of the countree, clergy and other,  
 That are sought coulable there-in, ne knowes sought in arms,  
 Forthy the comlich king, courtails and noble,  
 Commaundes thee keasly to kaire of his landes  
 1320 Or elles for thy knighthode encounter him ones.  
 Sean thou covetes the crown, let it be declared!  
 I have discharged me here, challenge who likes,  
 Before all thy chevalry, cheftaines and other.  
 Shape us an answer, and shant thou no longer,  
 1325 That we may shift at the short and shew to my lord."
- The Emperour answerd with austere wordes:  
 "Ye are with mine enmy, Sir Arthur himselfe;  
 It is none honour to me to outrage his knighting,  
 Though ye be irous men that ayers on his needes;  
 1330 Ne were it not for reverence of my rich table,  
 Thou sholde repeat full rathe of thy rade wordes!  
 Such a rebard as thou rebuke any lordes  
 With their retinues arrayed, full reul and noble!  
 But say to thy soveraign I send him these wordes:  
 1335 Here will I sajourn, whiles me lefe thinkes,  
 And sithen seek in by Seine with solace thereafter,  
 Ensege all the citees by the salt strandes,  
 And senn ride in by Rhone that runnes so fair,  
 And of his rich cassiles rush down the walles;  
 1340 I shall nought leve in Paris, by process of time,<sup>1</sup>  
 His part of a pecheline, prove when him likes!"
- "Now certes," says Sir Wivain, "much wonder have I  
 That such a alfin as thou dare speke such wordes!"

<sup>1</sup> Within a short time I shall not leave him in Paris / So much as a tiny spic; let him see this when he pleases.

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- I had lever than all Fraunce, that heved is of rowmes,  
1345 Fight with thee faithfully on feld by our ose!" rasher; head
- Then answers Sir Gayous full gabbed wordes —  
Was eme to the Emperour and erl themselves:  
"Ever were these Bretons braggars of old!  
Lo, how he brawles him for his bright weodes.  
1350 As he might brittes us all with his beard riche!  
Yet he barkes much boose, you boy there he standes!" foolish  
uncle  
Bretons  
garments (i.e., armor)  
beat down; sword  
boast; know
- Then greved Sir Gawain at his grete wordes,  
Graithes toward the gone with grouchand herfe;  
With his steelen brand he strikes off his heved,  
1355 And sterres oer to his steed, and with his stale weodes.  
Through the watches they went, these worshipful knyghtes,  
And findes in their fare-way wonderlich many;  
Over the water they went by wightnes of horses,  
And took wind as they wolde by the wood hemmes.  
1360 Then follows frekly on foot feckes ynow,  
And of the Romans arrayed upon rich steedes  
Chased through a champain our chevalrous knyghtes  
Til a chef forest on chalk-white horses.  
But a freke all in fine gold and fretted in sable  
1365 Come furthermost on a Frieson in flamand weodes; Friesian horse; bright armor  
A fair flourisht spere in fewter he castes,  
And followes fast on our folk and freshly ascries. spear-arm  
eagerly; cries
- Then Sir Gawain the good upon a gray steed  
He grippes him a grete spere and graithly him hites;  
1370 Through the gutes into the gore he girdes him even,  
That the grouden steel glides to his herfe!  
The gone and the grete horse at the ground ligges,  
Full gristlich groanand for gref of his woundes.  
Then presses a priker in, full proudly arrayed,  
1375 That beres all of purpure, paled with silver<sup>1</sup> readily  
smites  
sharpened  
man; lies  
grisly; groaning; grief  
rider

<sup>1</sup> That bear on his shield a heraldic device all of purple, striped with silver

Alliterative *Morte Arthure*

- Bigly on a brown steed he proffers full large.<sup>1</sup>  
 He was a paynime of Persie that thus him peresewd;  
 Sir Boys, unabaid all, he buskis him againes;  
 With a busous lance he beres him through,  
 That the beeme and the brode sheld upon the bencis ligges!  
 And he brings forth the blade and bounces to his fellowes.
- Then Sir Feltemour, of micht a man mikel praised,  
 Was moved on his manner and menaced full fast;  
 He graithes to Sir Gawain graithly to work,  
 For gref of Sir Gayoss that is on ground leved.  
 Then Sir Gawain was glad; again him he rides;  
 With Galuth, his good swerd, graithly him hitnes;  
 The knight on the courser he cleved in sonder,  
 Clenlich fro the crown his corse he devised,  
 And thus he killis the knight with his kidd wepes.
- Then a rich man of Rome relied to his bernes:  
 "It shall repente us full sore and we ride farther!  
 You are bold boasters that such hale workes;  
 It befell him full foal that them so first named!"
- Then the rich Romans returns their bridles,  
 To their tentes in teen, tellis their leedes  
 How Sir Marshall de Mowne is on the molde leved,  
 Forjousted at that joursee for his geete japes.<sup>2</sup>  
 But there chases on our men chevalrous knighthes,  
 Five thousand folk upon fair steedes,  
 Fast to a forest over a fell water  
 That filleth fro the fallow se fifty mile large.  
 There were Bretons embushed and banelettes noble,  
 Of chevalry chef of the kinges chamber;  
 Sees them chase our men and changen their horses  
 And chop down cheftaines that they most charged.  
 Then the embusment of Bretons broke out at ones,

pagan; *Persia*  
 unabashed  
 wild  
 fierce (one)  
 goes

much  
 charges at; readily  
 readily  
 cleaved in two  
 Cleanly; body he divided  
 famous

nailed  
 if  
 boasters; evil

turn back  
 grief  
 ground

strong (i.e., swift)  
 is filled; pale sea; away  
 in ambush; senior knights

redirec  
 ambush

<sup>1</sup> *With great force, on a brown horse, he offers battle boldly*

<sup>2</sup> *Overjoyed at their battle despite his great boast*

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- |      |   |   |
|------|---|---|
|      | Boothly at banner all Bedvere knighthes<br>Arrested of the Romans that by the firth rides,  | <i>boldly; Bedvere's<br/>wood</i>   |
| 1410 | All the realest reakes that to Rome longes;<br>They ishe on the enemis and egerly strikes,<br>Erics of Engeland, and "Arthur!" ascries;<br>Through booyes and bright sheldes brestes they thirle,     | <i>belong<br/>rush<br/>cry<br/>hauberk; pierce</i>                              |
|      | Bretoes of the boldest, with their bright swordes.  |   |
| 1415 | There was Romans over-ridden and radeley wounded,<br>Arrested as rebawdes with riotous knighthes!<br>The Romans out of array removed at ones<br>And rides away in a rout — for reddour it seemes!     | <i>low-fellow<br/>broke ranks<br/>fear</i>                                      |
|      | To the Senatour Peter a sandesman is comen<br>And said: "Sir, sekerly, your segges are surprised!"  | <i>messenger<br/>men; seized</i>  |
| 1420 | Then ten thousand men he sembled at ones<br>And set sodenly on our segges by the salt strandes.<br>Then were Bretons abant and grieved a little,<br>But yet the bannerettes bold and bacheliers noble | <i>sudden; men<br/>abashed<br/>(see note to line 68)</i>                        |
| 1425 | Brekes that batail with brestes of steedes;<br>Sir Bois and his bold men much bale workes!<br>The Romanes redies them, arrayes them better,<br>And all to-rashes our men with their restie horses,    | <i>Break; battalions<br/>pain<br/>rally themselves<br/>dash asunder; rested</i> |
| 1430 | Arrested of the richest of the Round Table,<br>Over-rides our rare-ward and grete newth workes!   | <i>rear guard; sorrow</i>   |
|      | Then the Bretons on the beste abides no lenger,<br>But fled to the forest and the feld leved;   | <i>field</i>  |
|      | Sir Berille is borne down and Sir Bois takes,<br>The best of our bold men unblithely wounded;   |   |
| 1435 | But yet our stale on a strenghe stotais a little,<br>All to-stonayed with the strokis of tho sterren knighthes,   | <i>company; stronghold power<br/>astonished; threats</i>                        |
|      | Made sorrow for their soveraigne that so there was nomen,   | <i>taken</i>  |
|      | Besought God of succour, send when him liked!   |   |
|      | Then comes Sir Idrus, armed up at all rightes,  | <i>completely</i>   |
| 1440 | With five hundred men upon fair steedes,<br>Feaines fast at our folk freshly thereafter   | <i>Aske; eagerly</i>  |
|      | Yif their frendes were fer that on the feld founded.  | <i>were</i>   |
|      | Then says Sir Gwain, "So me God help,   |   |

Alliterative Morte Arthur

- 1445 We have been chased today and chaled as haec,  
Rebuked with Romances upon their rich steedes,  
And we lurked under lee as lowrand wretched!  
I look never on my lord the dayes of my life!  
And we so litherly him help that him so well liked!"
- drive like hares  
shelter; lowering
- Then the Bretons brotely broches their steedes  
And boldly is batayl upon the beate rides;  
All the fers men before frekly ascries,  
Ferkand in the forest to freshen themselfen.  
The Romanes then redyly arrayes them beter,  
On row on a rowm feld rightes their wepons,  
By the rich river and rewles the people;  
And with reddour Sir Bois is in arrest holden.
- boldly; spur  
serve; boldly cry  
Striding through  
broad; adject  
arrange the troops  
fear
- Now they sembled unsaught by the salt stremes;  
Sadly these seker men setnes their dinnes,  
With lovely launces on loft they bisten togodres,  
In Lorraine so lordly on lepard steedes.  
There were gomes through-gird with grounden wepons  
Grisly gaspand with grosshand lances,  
Grete leedes of Greece greved so high.  
Swiftly with swordes they swappes thereafter,  
Swappes down full sweperly sweltande knightes,  
That all swelches on swarth that they over-swingen.  
So many sways in swogh swoonand at ones —  
Sir Gawain the gracious fall graithly he workes;  
The gretest he greetes with grisly wondres;  
With Galuth he girdes down full galliard knightes,  
For gref of the grete lord so grimly he strikes!  
He rides forth seally and redyly thereafter  
There this real resk was in arrest holden;  
He rives the rank steel, he rittes their breyses,  
And reft them the rich man and rode to his strengthes.  
The Senator Peter then perseeued him after,
- fiercely attacked  
dash together  
pierced; sharpened  
gaping angry expressions  
strike  
swiftly dying  
die; ground; cut down  
faint  
mirth; jolly  
royally  
To wher; i.e., Bois  
ript; hauberk  
bref; stronghold  
pursued

<sup>1</sup> May I never look on my lord the rest of my life! If we serve him so poorly, we who once pleased him so well!

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

	Through the press of the pople with his pris knyghtes, Appertly for the prisoner proves his strengthes, With prakers the peoudest that to the press longes;	Openly; strength riders; company
1480	Wrothly on the wrong hand Sir Wawain he strikes, With a wepon of war unwisly him hittes; The brewey on the back half he bristes in sonder;	Angrily; left unpleasantly bowbreak; breaks in two
	And yet he brought forth Sir Bois for all their bale bernes! <sup>1</sup>	
	Then the Bretons boldly braggen their trampes,	Blow; pumpes
1485	And for bliss of Sir Bois was brought out of bodes, Boldly in batayl they bere down knyghtes;	
	With brandes of brown steel they beitten mailles;	shining armor
	They steked stedeys in stour with steelen wepens	attack; battle; steel
	And all stowde with strengthe that stood them aginst;	attack down
1490	Sir Idurus fitz Ewain then "Arthur!" ascries, Assembles on the senatour with sixteen knyghtes	cry
	Of the sekerest men that to our side longed.	Attack
	Sodenly in a soppe they set in at ones,	small troop
	Foynes fast at the fore-breste with flamand swordes	Strike; gleaming
1495	And fightes fast at the frost freshly thereafter,	eagerly
	Felles felie on the feld upon the ferre side.	many; farther
	Fey on the fair feld by tho fresh straedes.	Dead
	But Sir Idurus fitz Ewain austers himselfen	rake
	And enters in only and egerly strikes,	alone
1500	Seekes to the senatour and seses his bridle;	sizes
	Unsaughly he said him these sittand wordes:	boldly; facing
	"Yelde thou, sir, yapely, yif thou thy lile yernes;	Yield; quickly; yearn for
	For giftes that thou give may thou yeme not thyselfen,	serve
	For, dreddles, drech thou or drop any wiles, <sup>2</sup>	
1505	Thou shall die this day through dist of my handes!"	
	"I assent," quod the senatour, "so me Crist help.	said
	So that I be safe brought before the king selven;	Providing that
	Ramsous me reasonably, as I may over-reche,	reasonably; obtain

<sup>1</sup> Even so, he (Sir Gawayne) rescord Sir Bois despite all their baleful knyghtes!

<sup>2</sup> For, doubtless, if you delay or play any tricks

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- After my rentes in Rome may redily farther." tribute; readily furnish
- 1510 Then answers Sir Idres with austeren wordes:  
"Thou shall have condicoun as the king likes, conditions  
When thou comes to the kith there the court holdes,  
In case his counsel be to keep thee no longer,  
To be killed at his commanadement his knigtes before."
- 1515 They led him forth in the roost and latched off his weedes, took; armor  
Left him with Liosel and Lowell his brother.  
O-low in the land then, by the lithe strandes, Below; pleasant  
Sir Lucias lege-men lost are forever!  
The Senatour Peter is prisoner taken!
- 1520 Of Pense and Port Jaffe full many pris knigthes Persia; Jaffe (Joppa)  
And much pople whilal perished themselves!  
For press of the passage they plunged at ones!<sup>1</sup>  
There might men see Romans newfelly wounded,  
Over-ridden with renkes of the Round Table.
- 1525 In the raike of the burth they righten their brenyes<sup>2</sup> noble  
That ran all on red blood redily all over;  
They right in the rere-ward full riotous knigthes<sup>3</sup> change horses  
For ransoun of red gold and real steedes;  
Redily relayes and restes their horses,
- 1530 In route to the rich king they rode all at ones. company
- A knight kaines before, and to the king tellis: goes  
"Sir, here comes thy messengeres with mirthes fro the mounes;  
They have been matched today with men of the marches,  
Foremagled in the morass with marvelous knigthes! Hacked to pieces; marsh
- 1535 We have foughten, in faith, by yea fresh strandes,  
With the frekest folk that to thy fo losages, boldest; belong  
Fifty thousand on feld of fers men of armes  
Within a furlong of way foy are believed!  
We have eschewed this check through chance of Our Lord escaped; defeat

<sup>1</sup> Because of the crowd at the ford they leaped into the water together

<sup>2</sup> On the path by the stream they adjust their hauberk

<sup>3</sup> They placed the riotous (Roman) knigthes in the rear guard (as prisoners)

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- 1540 Of tho chevaileous men that charged thy pople.  
 The chef chaunceller of Rome, a cheftain full noble,  
 Will ask the charter of pees, for charitee himselfen;  
 And the Senaour Peter to prisoner is taken.
- 1545 Of Perse and Port Jaffe paynimes ynow  
 Comes prikan in the pees with thy pris knyghtes,  
 With povertee in thy prisoun their paines to drie.  
 I beseek you, sir, say what you likes,  
 Whether ye suffer them saught or soon delivered.
- 1550 Ye may have for the senaour sixty horse charged  
 Of silver by Saterday full sekerly payed,  
 And for the chef chaunceller, the chevaler noble,  
 Charottes chockful charged with gold.  
 The remenaunt of the Romanes be in arrest holden,
- 1555 Til their restes in Rome be rightwisly knownen.  
 I beseek you, sir, certify you lordes,  
 Yif ye will send them over the se or keep them yourselves.  
 All your seker mes, for sooth, sound are beleved,  
 Save Sir Ewain fitz Henry is in the side wounded."
- 1560 "Crist be thanked," quod the king, "and his clere Moder,  
 That you comforted and helped by craft of Himeselfen.  
 Skillfully skomfiture He skiftes as Him likes.<sup>1</sup>  
 Is none so skathly may scape ne skew fro His handes;  
 Destainy and doughtiness of deedes of arms,
- 1565 All is deemed and delt at Drightenes will!  
 I can thee thank for thy come; it comforts us all!  
 Sir knight," says the conqueror, "so me Crist help,  
 I give thee for thy tithandes Toulouse the rich,  
 The toll and the tachementes, tavernes and other,
- 1570 The town and the tenementes with towres so high,  
 That touches to the temporarie, whiles my time lastes.<sup>2</sup>  
 But say to the senaour I send him these wordes:  
 There shall no silver him save but Ewain recover.

paynes  
spurring choice  
suffer  
grant; peace  
loaded  
Wagons; loaded  
remain  
correctly  
make certain

immaculate  
Destiny  
God's  
coming  
ridings  
appurtenances  
unless

<sup>1</sup> God skillfully handles trouble as He pleases. / No one is so harmful that he can escape or slip away from His hands

<sup>2</sup> All that concerns temporal life is yours while I live

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- |      |  |  |
|------|--|--|
|      | I had never see him sink on the salt strandes<br>Than the segge were seke that is so sore wounded.   | rather<br>man; sick  |
| 1575 | I shall disever that sorte, so me Crist help,<br>And set them full solitary in sere kinges landes.<br>Shall he never sound see his scinoures in Rome,<br>Ne sit in the assemblee in sight with his feres,<br>For it comes to no king that conquerour is holden | separate; company<br>various<br>lands<br>comrades<br>is becoming; considered |
| 1580 | To comose with his captives for covetis of silver.<br>It come never of knighthed, know it if him like,<br>To carp of cosery when captives are taken;<br>It ought to no prisoners to press no lordes  | bargain; covetousness<br>knighthood<br>business<br>belongs (i.e., is proper) |
|      | Ne come in presence of princes when parties are moved.   | business is discussed  |
| 1585 | Commaund yon constable, the castle that yemes,<br>That he be clelich kepted and in close holden:<br>He shall have maundement to-morn ere mid-day be rungen<br>To what march they shall merk with maugree to lenges."   | govern<br>confinement<br>command<br>go; spare                                |
|      | They convey this captive with clene men of armes   | excellent  |
| 1590 | And kend him to the constable, als the king biddes<br>And senne to Arthur they ayer and egerly him touches<br>The answer of the Emperour, iroas of deedes.<br>Then Sir Arthur, on erthe atbelest of other  | entreat; as<br>go; will<br>empty<br>noblist                                  |
|      | At even, at his own bordre avauanted his lordes:   | praised  |
| 1595 | "Me ought to honour them in erthe over all other thinges,<br>That thus in mine absence austen themselves!<br>I shall them love whiles I live, so me Our Lord help  | game; is granted   |
|      | And give them landes full large where them best likes;   | wounded; pleasure  |
| 1600 | They shall not lose on this laik, yif me life happen,<br>That thus are lamed for my love by these litte strandes."   | done   |
|      | But in the clere dawing the dere king himselfen<br>Commaunded Sir Cadoc, with his dere knyghtes,   |  |
|      | Sir Clesensus, Sir Cleremond, with clene men of armes,<br>Sir Clowdmur, Sir Cleges, to convey these lordes;  |  |
| 1605 | Sir Bois and Sir Berille, with banners displayed,<br>Sir Bawdwin, Sir Brian, and Sir Bedvere the rich,<br>Sir Raysald and Sir Richer, Rowlaunde childer,<br>To ride with the Romances in route with their feres:<br>"Prikes now privily to Paris the rich      | comrades<br>secretly   |

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- 1610 With Peter the prisoner and his pris knighthes;  
 Beteche them the provost in presence of iodes  
 O pain and o peril that pendas there-to  
 That they be wisely watched and in ward holden,  
 Warded of warantises with worshipful knighthes;  
 Wage him wight men and wondre for no silver;  
 I have warned that wye; beware yif him likes!"
- Now bounces the Britons als the king biddes,  
 Bunkes their batailles, their banners displayes.<sup>1</sup>
- 1615 Toward Chartres they chese, these chevalross knighthes;
- 1620 And in the Champain land full fair they eschede,  
 For the Emperoar of might had cedained himselfen  
 Sir Utolf and Sir Evander, two honourable kinges,  
 Erles of the Orient with austeren knighthes.
- 1625 Of the austrouncest men that to his host longed
- 1630 Sir Sextynour of Lyby and senatours many,  
 The king of Sarry himself with Saraxons ynow;  
 The senatour of Satere with summes full huge  
 Was assigned to that court by scite of his peers,
- 1635 Trays toward Troye the treason to work,  
 To have betrapped with a trayn our traveland knighthes,  
 That had perceived that Peter at Paris sholde leng  
 In prisoun with the provost his paines to drie.  
 Foorth they bunked them boan with banners displayed,
- 1640 Lookes the countree be clere; the corners are large;  
 Discovers now sclerly skrogges and other,  
 That no scathel in the skrogges scora us hereafter;  
 Look ye skift it so that us no scathe limpe,
- Entrust them to  
On the; appende
- sworn guards  
Hire; hasten
- prepare; as  
go  
succeeded
- store  
most adventurous  
Lybia  
Syria  
Satni  
assure
- Goes; Troyes (in France)  
trick; travelling  
suffer  
made themselves ready  
bushes
- cliffs
- Search; carefully shrubs  
harmful person; shrubs  
arrange; harm befall

<sup>1</sup> Make ready their battalions; display their banners

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

For no scomfitare is skulkyr is scomfit ever."<sup>1</sup>

- 1645 Now they hic to the holt, these baragous knighthes,  
To herken of the high men to helpen these lordes.  
Findes them helmed hole and horsed on steedes,  
Hovand on the high way by the holt hemmes.  
With knightly countenaunce Sir Clegis himselfen  
1650 Cries to the company and carpes these wordes:  
"Is there any kidd knight, kaiser or other,  
Will kithe for his kinges love craftes of armes?  
We are comen fro the king of this kith rich  
That knownen is for conqueror, crownd in erthe;  
1655 His rich retinues here, all of the Round Table,  
To ride with that real in rost when him likes.  
We seek jousting of war, yif any will happen,  
Of the jolliest men adjudged by lordes;  
If here be any hathel man, erl or other,  
1660 That for the Emperour love wil auarter himselfe."

AASSEN; wood; violent  
hear; noble  
completely armed  
Waiting; wood's edge

renowned; peace officer  
show  
powerful country

noble

- And an erl then in anger answers him soon:  
"Me angers at Arthur and at his hathel bernes  
That thus in his error occupies these newmes,  
And outrayes the Emperour, his earthly lord!  
1665 The array and the realtees of the Round Table  
Is with rancour rehersed in newmes full many,  
Of our nenes of Rome such revel he holdes;  
He shall give resoun full rathe, if us right happen,  
That many shall repent that in his rost rides,  
1670 For the reckless roy so newles himselfe!"

outrage  
royalty  
sold

quickly  
Because; king

- "A!" says Sir Clegis then, "so me Crist help!  
I know by thy carping a couanter thee seemes!  
But be thou auditour or erl or Emperour thyselfes,  
Upon Arthures behalf I answer thee soon.  
1675 The reek so real that newles us all,  
The riotous men and the rich of the Round Table:

sukking; accountant  
accountant

man

<sup>1</sup> No attack from ambush is ever defeated

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- He has araised his account and redde all his rollis,  
 For he will give a reckoning that new shall after,  
 That all the rich shall repente that to Rome longes  
 drawn up; read; records  
 1680 Ere the rereage be require of renes that he clai mes.  
 We crave of your courtesie three courses of war,  
 And clai mes of knighthood, take keep to yourselven!  
 Ye do betray us today with troufeland wordes;  
 Of such troufeland men treachery me thinkes.  
 trick; trifling  
 1685 Send out sadly certaine knighthood  
 Or say me sekerly sooth; forsake yif you likes." travel ling  
 surrender
- Then says the King of Syria, "Als save me Our Lord,  
 Yif thou haue all the day thou bes not delivered?  
 But thou sekerly ensare with certaine knighthood  
 1690 That thy cose and thy crest be knownen with lordes,  
 Of armes of auncestry endowed with landes."  
 Syria; As  
 delay; will be  
 cose of armes  
 endowed
- "Sir Kiang," says Sir Clegis, "full knighthly thou askes;  
 I know it be for cowards thou carpes these wordes;  
 Mine armes are of auncestry enowred with lordes,  
 1695 And has in banner been borne sene Sir Brut time;  
 At the citice of Troy that time was besieged,  
 Oft seen in assault with certaine knighthood;  
 Forthy Brut brought us and all our bold elders  
 To Bretaine the Brodder within ship-bordes."  
 believe; cowardice  
 acknowledged  
 besieged  
 assault  
 Therefore  
 Great Britain; aboard ships
- 1700 "Sir," says Sir Sextynoar, "say what thee likes,  
 And we shall suffer thee, als us best seemes;  
 Look thy trumpes be trussed and troufle no longer.<sup>2</sup>  
 For though thou tarry all the day, thee tides no better.  
 1705 For there shall never Roman that in my rout rides  
 Be with rebawdes rebuked, whiles I in world regne!"  
 besides  
 low follows
- Then Sir Clegis to the king a little inclined,  
 Kaires to Sir Cador and knighthly him telles:  
 "We have founedes in yon firth, flourished with leves,  
 bowed  
 forest

<sup>2</sup> See that you pack up your trumpets and trifle no longer.

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

1710 The flower of the fairest folk that to thy fo lenges,  
 Fifty thousand of folk of fers men of armes,  
 That fair are fewtered on front under yon free bowes;  
 They are embashed on bieakes, with banners displayed,  
 In yon beechen wood, upon the way sides.  
 They have the farrt for-set all of the fair water,  
 1715 That fayfully of force fight as behooves,  
 For thus us shapes today, shortly to tell;  
 Whether we shoun or show, shift as thee likes."<sup>1</sup>

fierce

prepared for battle

in ambush

beech

ford obstructed

truly

it befalls us

"Nay," quod Cador, "so me Crist help,  
 It were shame that we sholde shoun for so little!  
 1720 Sir Launcelot shall never laugh, that with the king lenges,  
 That I sholde let my way for lede upon erthe;  
 I shall be dede and usdone ere I here drocne  
 For drocne of any dogges-son in yon dim shawes!"<sup>2</sup>

shun (battle)

give up; man

delay

dog's son; bushes

Sir Cador then knightly comfortes his pople,  
 1725 And with courage keen he carpes these wordes:  
 "Think on the valiant prince that veseteth us ever  
 With landes and lordshippes where us best likes.  
 That has us ducherys delt and dubbed us knighthes,  
 Given us gernoms and gold and guerdons many,  
 1730 Grayhoundes and grene horse and alking games,  
 That gaines til any gone that under God lives;  
 Think on rich renoun of the Round Table,  
 And let it never be refut us for Romas in erthe;  
 Foyne you not faintly, ne frithes no wepess,  
 1735 But look ye fight faithfully, frekes yosselfen;  
 I wolde be welled all quick and quartered in sonder,<sup>3</sup>  
 But I work my deod, whiles I in wrath lunge."

heart

endow

dukedoms

gifts; rewards

every sort of pleasure

profit any man

taken from

Duel; spare

Unless

Then this doughty duke dubbed his knighthes:  
 Ioseke and Askanere, Aladuke and other,  
 1740 That eires were of Essex and all those esse marches,

heirs; eastern

<sup>1</sup> Whether we shun (battle) or show (fight), decide as you please

<sup>2</sup> I would be boiled alive and cut in quarters

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

	Howell and Hardolf, happy in armes, Sir Heryll and Sir Herygall, these harageous knighthes. Then the sovereign assigned certain lordes, Sir Wawayne, Sir Uryelle, Sir Bedvere the rich.	forhonor violent
1745	Raynald and Richere, Rowlandes childer: "Takes keep on this prince with your pris knighthes, And yif we in the stour withstanden the better, Standes here in this stede and stirres no further; And yif the chaunce fall that we be over-charged,	<i>Take care of</i> ; i.e., <i>Poor</i> <i>battle</i> <i>place</i>
1750	Eschewes to some castle and cheves yourselves, Or ride to the rich king, if you too happen, And bid him come redyly to rescue his bernes."	<i>Escape; save</i> <i>respite</i>
	And then the Bretons brothely embraces their sheldes, Braides on bacesettes and baskes their lances, Thus he fittes his folk and to the feld rides, Five hundred on a front fewtered at ones!	<i>boldly; strap on</i> <i>Draw on helmets</i> <i>arrange</i>
	With trumpes they trine and trapped steedes, With cornettes and clarions and clerical notes; Shockes in with a shake and shuntes no longer, There shawes were sheen under the shire eves. <sup>1</sup>	<i>readied spears</i> <i>trumpets; go; caparisoned</i> <i>skillful</i> <i>sudden movement; hold back</i>
1760	And then the Romances rout removes a little, Raikes with a rere-ward those reat knighthes; So raply they ride there that all the rout ringes Of rives and rank steel and rich gold mailles. <sup>2</sup>	<i>Gone; rear guard</i> <i>quickly</i>
1765	Then shot out of the shaw sheltrones many, With sharp wemens of war shootand at ones. The King of Lyby before the avantward he ledes, And all his lele lege-men all on load ascries.	<i>hasty troops</i>
	Then this cruel king castes in fewter, Caught him a covend horse, and his course holdes, Beres to Sir Berille and brothely him hittes, Through the golet and the gorger he hurtes him even.	<i>Lily; vanguard</i> <i>loyal regemen</i> <i>readies his spear</i> <i>armored</i> <i>stomach</i> <i>gullet; necklace</i> <i>run</i>
1770	The gome and the grete horse at the ground ligges.	

<sup>1</sup> Where shrake were bright under the shining eaves of the forest

<sup>2</sup> Of rives and strong steel and rich gold chain mail

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- 1775 And gretes graithely to God and gives Him the soul. *crier*  
Thus is Berille the bold brought out of life,  
And hides after the burial that him best likes. *awaits the burial*
- 1780 And then Sir Cador of Cornwall is careful in herte,  
Because of his kinsman that thus is miscarried; *sorrowful*  
Unbeslappes the corse, and kisses him oft.  
Embraces  
1785 Gart keep him covert with his clere knyghtes. *Commanded; protected*  
Then laughs the Lyby king, and all on loud meles:  
"Yea lord is lighted! Me likes the better!  
He shall not dere us today; the devil have his bones!" *speak  
fitter  
harm*
- 1790 "Yon king," says Sir Cador, "carpes fell large,  
Because he killed this keen — Crist have thy soal! — *brave one  
penance*  
He shall have oos-bote, so me Crist help!  
Ere I kaire of this coste, we shall encounter ones;  
So may the wind wheel turn, I quite him ere even,  
Soothly himselfen or some of his feees!" *place  
At does; repay  
compassion*
- 1795 Then Sir Cador the keen knightly he workes,  
Cries, "A Cornwall!" and castes in fewer,  
Girdes streeke through the stout on a steed rich;  
Many sterren men he stirred by strenghe of him ose;  
When his spere was sprongen, he sped him full yeste,  
Swapped out with a sword that swiked him never.  
Wrought waxes fall wide, and wounded knyghtes.  
Workes in his wayfare full workand sides,  
And hewes of the hardiest hales in sonder,  
That all bleddes with blood there his blonk ranses!  
1800 So many bernes the bold brought out of life,  
Times tyraunies down and temes their saddles,  
And turnes out of the toil when him time thinkes! *readies his spear  
Striker straight; battle  
axe; struck  
broken; eagerly  
failed  
Makes; painful  
necks  
horse  
Knock; empties*
- 1805 Then the Lyby king cries full loud  
On Sir Cador the keen with cruel wordes:  
"Thou has worship won and wounded knyghtes!  
Thou weenes for thy wightness the world is thine own!  
I shall wait at thine hand, wye, by my trewth;  
I have warned thee well, beware yif thou likes!" *Libyan  
suppose; power  
man; word*

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

	With cornes and clarions these new-made knyghtes	horns
1810	Lithes unto the cry and castis in fewter,	<i>Lithen; ready their spears</i>
	Ferkes in on a frost on ferast steedes, <sup>1</sup>	
	Felled at the first come fifty at ones;	
	Shot through the sheltrom and shivered launces,	troops; split
	Laid down in the lympe lordly bernes.	heap
1815	And thus nobly out new men notes their strengthes!	sor
	But new note is anon that noyes me sore:	business; annoy
	The King of Lyby has laught a steed that him liked,	named
	And comes in lordly in liones of silver,	with heraldic lions
	Umbelappes the lympe and lettes in sonder;	Surrounds; group; drives
1820	Many led with his launce the life has he reved!	taken
	Thus he chases the childer of the kinges chamber,	open fields
	And killis in the champaines chevalrous knyghtes;	hunting spear
	With a chasing spere he choppes down many!	
	There was Sir Aladeke slain and Achisour wounded,	
1825	Sir Origge and Sir Emyngall hewen all to peces!	pieces
	And there was Lewlin laught and Lewlins brother	taken
	With lordes of Lyby and led to their strengthes;	stronghold
	Ne had Sir Clegis comen and Clement the noble,	
	Our new men had gone to nought and many mo other.	many others
1830	Then Sir Cadur the keen castis in fewter	<i>readies his spear</i>
	A cruel launce and a keen and to the king rides,	
	Hittis him high on the helm with his hard wepen,	
	That all the hot blood of him to his hand rannes!	
	The hethen harageous king upon the hethe ligges,	heathen violent; heath
1835	And of his hertly hurt heled he never.	mortal; healed
	Then Sir Cadur the keen cries full load:	
	"Thou has corn-boie, sir king, there God give thee sorrow;	penance
	Thou killed my cousin; my care is the less!	
	Kele thee now in the clay and comfort thyself;	Cool yourself
1840	Thou scorned us long eee, with thy scornful wordes,	
	And now thou has cheved so, it is thine own scathe;	fared; harm

<sup>1</sup> Red on iron-gray steeds at the front rank (of the Romans)

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

Hold at thou bent has; it harness but little,<sup>1</sup>  
For hething is home-hold, use it who-so will!

	The King of Sury then is sorrowful in herte,	Syria
1845	For sake of his soveraign that thus was surprised;	taken
	Sembled his Sarazens and senatours many;	
	Unsaughtly they set then upon our sene knighthes.	Hostilely; various
	Sir Cador of Cornwall he counters them soon	enemours
	With his kidd company clenlich arrayed;	famous; splendidly
1850	In the front of the firth, as the way forthes,	forest; goes forth
	Fifty thousand of folk was felled at ones.	
	There was at the assemblee certain knighthes	every side
	Soone wounded soon upon see halves.	most dependable; company
	The sekerest Sarazenes that to that some longed	
1855	Behind the saddles were set six foot large;	cut down; troop shielded
	They sheerd in the sheltron shelded knightes;	Men; wrinkled (plated)
	Shalkes they shot through shrinkand mailles;	armor braided; pierced
	Through brenyes beowden brestes they thirled;	Arm guards; burst
	Bracers barnishit bristes in sonder;	Bloody shields
1860	Blasons bloody and blonkes they hewen,	shining; prancing
	With brandes of brown steel, brankand steedes!	quickly destroy
	The Beotoss brothely britises so many	earth
	The bente and the brode feld all on blood runnes!	captured
	By then Sir Kayous the keen a capitain has wonnen;	rushes; churches
1865	Sir Clegis clinges in and cleykes another;	Cordova
	The Captain of Cordewa, under the king seiven,	country
	That was key of the kith of all that costie rich	captured
	Uwolf and Evander loneke had nommen	Africa
	With the Erl of Afrike and other grete lordes,	surrendered
1870	The King of Sury the keen to Sir Cador is yelden,	Suri
	The Seneschal of Sutere to Sagramour himselfen.	taken
	When the chevalry saw their cheftaines were nommen,	go
	To a chef forest they chosen their wayes,	gross
	And feeld them so faint they fell in the greves,	fern; forest; fear
1875	In the feren of the firth for ferd of our pople.	shrub
	There might men see the rich ride in the shawes	

<sup>1</sup> Keep what you have taken; it does little harm. / For score is internal, use it who will

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- To rip up the Romases rudlich wounded,  
Shouties after men harageous knighthes,  
By hundrethes they hewed down by the holt ewest  
Thus our chevalrous men chases the popule  
To a castel they escheved the few that eschaped.
- Then relies the reakes of the Roand Table  
For to riot the wood there the dake resses;  
Rassackes the ridders all, raignt up their feres,  
That is the fighting before Fey were believed.  
Sir Cador gart charre them and cover them fair.<sup>1</sup>
- Carried them to the king with his best knighthes,  
And passes unto Paris with prisoners himselfen,  
Betoook them the provost, prynces and other,  
Tas a sope in the towr and taries no longer  
But turnes tite to the king and him with tonge tellies:  
"Sir," says Sir Cador, "a case is betallen;  
We have countered today in yon coste rich  
With kinges and kaiseres cruel and noble,  
And knighthes and keen men clenlich arrayed!  
They had at yon forest for-set on the wayer,  
At the farrth in the firth with fers men of armes;  
There fought we in faith and foisted with spores  
On feld with thy fomen and felled them on live;
- The King of Lyby is laid and in the feld leved,  
And many of his lege-men that yore to him longed;  
Other lordes are laught of uncouth ledes;  
We have led them at lenge, to live whiles thee likes.  
Sir Utolf and Sir Evanser, these honourable knighthes,  
By an auener of armes Ioseke has nomen,  
With erles of Oriant and austeren knighthes,  
Of auuncstry the best men that to the host longed;  
The Senavour Carous is caught with a knight,  
The Captain of Corrette that cruel is holden,  
The Seneschal of Sutere, unsaught with these other,  
The King of Sarri himselfen and Sarazenes ynow.

<sup>1</sup> Sir Cador commanded that they be put in wagons and covered with fair clothe

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- Bet fey of ours in the feld are fourteen knighthes.  
I will not feyne ne forbere but faithfully tellen:  
Sir Berille is one, a bannerete noble,  
1915 Was killed at the first come with a king rich;  
Sir Aladuke of Towell with his tender knighthes,  
Among the Turkes was tint and in time founden;  
Good Sir Mawelle of Mawnes and Mawtene his brother,  
Sir Meneluke of Mentoche with marvelous knighthes."
- 1920 Then the worthy king writhes and weeped with his eyen.  
Carpes to his cosin Sir Cador these wordes:  
"Sir Cador, thy corage confoundes us all!" courage  
Cowardly thou castes out all my best knighthes!  
To put men in peril, it is no pris holden.  
1925 But the parties were parveyed and power arrayed;  
When thou were stedde on a strenghe thou sholde have with-stonden,<sup>1</sup>  
But yif ye wolde all my sternen stroy for the nones!" strong men destroy
- "Sir," says Sir Cador, "ye know well yowself;  
Ye are king in this kith; carp what you likes!  
1930 Shall never berne upbraid me that to thy bondie losges,  
That I sholde blan for their boste thy bidding to work! blame; command  
When any sterles to stale, viuff them the better, set out; company; supply  
Or they will be stonayed and stroyed in yon strait landes. astonished; destroyed  
I did my diligence today — I do me on lordes —<sup>2</sup>  
1935 And in daunger of dode for diverse knighthes.  
I have no grace to thy gree but such grete wordes;  
Yif I heven my herie, my hap is no better." speak my mind; fortune
- Though Sir Arthur was angered, he answers fair:  
"Thou has doughtily done, Sir Duke, with thy handes,  
1940 And has done thy dever with my dere knighthes;  
Forthly thou art deemed with dakes and erles  
For one of the doughtiest that dubbed was ever!  
There is none ischew of us on this erthe srongen;" issue (child); sprung

<sup>1</sup> When you were placed in a stronghold, you should have endured

<sup>2</sup> I did my duty today — I put myself at the judgment of lords

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

1945	<p>Thou art apparent to be cier, or one of thy childef.      Thou art my sister son; forsake shall I never!</p>	<i>heir</i> <i>sister's (diana's)</i>
	<p>Then gart he in his own tent a table be set,      And tryed in with trumpes traveled bernes,      Served them solemnly with selcouthe meies,      Swithe seemly in sight with silveren dishes.</p>	<i>commanded; own</i> <i>invited; trumpet; exhausted</i> <i>rare foods</i> <i>very</i>
1950	<p>When the senatours heide say that it so happened,      They said to the Emperour: "Thy segges are surprised!      Sir Arthur, thine enmy, has ostrayed thy lordes      That rode for the rescue of yon rich knighthes!"</p>	<i>beard</i> <i>warriors; allies</i> <i>outraged</i>
1955	<p>Thos dos but tianes thy time and toarmates thy pople;      Thos art betrayed of thy men that most thou on traistid.      That shall turn thee to tees and torfer forever!"</p>	<i>do; lose; torment</i> <i>by; betrayed</i> <i>pain; sorrow</i>
1960	<p>Then the Emperour leous was, angred at his herde      For our valiant bernes such prowesh had wonnen.      With king and with kaiser to counsel they wend,      Sovereignes of Saracens and senatours many.</p>	<i>inlay</i> <i>process</i>
1965	<p>Thus he sembles full soon certain lordes,      And in the assemblee then he says them these wordes:      "My herde soothly is set, assent if you likes,      To seek into Scasoinc with my seker knighthes,</p>	<i>assembly</i>
	<p>To fight with my lomen, if fortane me happen.      Yif I may find the freke within the four halves;      Or enter into Auguscie austers to seek,      And bide with my bold men within the burg rich,</p>	<i>Southern</i>
	<p>Rest us and revel and riot ourelyen.</p>	<i>sides</i>
1970	<p>Lende there is delite in lordshippes ynow,      To Sir Leo be comen with all his lele knighthes,      With toedes of Lambaydy to let him the wayes."</p>	<i>Autur (province in France)</i> <i>Remain; delight</i> <i>Unit; loyal</i> <i>binder</i>
	<p>But our wise king is wary to waiten his renkes,      And wischly by the woodes voides his host;</p>	<i>look out for</i> <i>withdraws</i>

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

1975	Gart felshes his fires flamand full high, <sup>1</sup> Trusset full traistely and trewe there-after. Sithes into Sessoine he sought at the gainest, And at the scours of the sun disseveres his knighthes,	Solmon; went; quickest rising; separates
1980	For-set them the citee upon sere halves, Sodenly on ech halfe, with seven grete stales, Only in the vale a vaweward embashes.	Blockaded; all sides Suddenly; each side; troops vanguard lies in ambush
1985	Sir Valiant of Wales with valiant knighthes Before the kinges visage made such avowes To vanquish by victory the Viscount of Rome;	appoynct attack
1990	Forthy the king charges him, what chancce so befall, Cheftain of the chek with chevalrous knighthes, And sithen meles with mouth that he most traistes; Demesces the middilward menskelly themselves,	to those that; trusts Lead; middle guard
1995	Fintes his footmen als him fair thinkes;	Among
2000	On front is the fore-brestie the flower of his knighthes, His archers on either half he ordained there-after To shake in a sheltron to shoot when them likes; He arrayed in the rereward full real knighthes	first rank ride go; troop
2005	With renkes renowned of the Roound Table, Sir Raynald, Sir Richere that ride was never, The rich Duke of Rouen with riders ynow, Sir Kayous, Sir Clegis, and clene men of arms, <sup>2</sup>	fearful
	The king cates to keep by tho clere strandes; Sir Lot and Sir Launcelot, these lordly knighthes	
	Shall lenge on his left hand with legiones ynow, To move in the morn-while, if the mist happen;	morning
	Sir Cador of Cornwall, and his koen knighthes, To keep at the karfuke, to close in thir other;	watch; crossroads; these
	He plantes in such places princes and erles	
	That no power sholde pass by so privee wayes.	secret

<sup>1</sup> Commands that his fires be fed so that they flame very high / And (commands them) to pack up securely and march away thereafter

<sup>2</sup> Sir Kayous, Sir Clegis, and good men of arms / The king decides should keep watch by those shining strands.

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

	But the Emperour aron with honourable knyghtes And erles entres the vale, austers to seek, And fliades Sir Arthur with hostes arrayed, And at his in-combe, to ecken his sorrow, Our burlich bold king upon the beaste hoves, With his batali on-brode and banners displayed. He had the cince for-set upon sere halves, Both the cleves and the clifffes with clese men of armes, The moss and the morass with mountes so high With grete multitude of men to mar him in the wayes.	entry; add to strong plain sides battalions spread out besieged; many sides galler bogs harm
2010	When Sir Lucius sees, he says to his lordes: "This traitour has treut this treason to work! He has the cince for-set upon sere halves, All the cleves and the clifffes with clese men of armes! Here is no way, iwis, ne no wit else, But fight with our fomes, for flee may we never!"	marched base; treason blockaded galler advice
2020	Then this rich man rathe arrayes his bernes, Rewled his Romans and real knyghtes; Buskes in the avayntward the Viscount of Rome; Fro Viterbo to Venise these valiant knyghtes Dresses up dredfully the dragon of gold, With egles all over enamelled of sable; Drawen dredfully the wine and draken there-after, Dakes and douspeenes, dabbed knyghtes;	swifly vanguard
2030	For dauscoesing of Dutch-men and dinning of pipes, All dinne for din that is the date hoved. And then Sir Lucius on loud said lordlich wordes: "Think on the much renoun of your rich faders, And the riotours of Rome that regned with lordes, And the renkes over-ran, all that regned in erthe, Ecroched all Cristendom by craftes of armes; In everich a viage the victory was holdes Inset all the Sarazenes within seven winter,	German; sounding resounded; noise; mood
2035	The part from Port Jaffe to Paradise gates! Though a roun be rebel, we reck it but little; It is reson and right the renk be restrained! Do dress we therefore, and bide we no longer,	ravages Invaded each expedition Overcame Jaffe reckon
2040		<i>Let us prepare ourselves</i>

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- For dredles, withouten doabt, the day shall be oures?" *nearly*
- 2045 Whea these woedes was said, the Welsh king himselfen  
 Was ware of this widerwin that warrayed his knighthes; *adversary; warned on*  
 Brothely in the vale with voice he ascries: *Quickly*  
 "Viscount of Valence, envious of deedes,  
 The vassalage of Viterbo today shall be revenged!  
 Unvanquisht fro this place void shall I never." *leave*
- 2050 Then the viscount, valiant, with a voice noble  
 Avoided the avayntward, enverround his horse;  
 He dressed in a derf sheld, endanted with sable,  
 With a dragon engoashed, dredful to shew,  
 Devourand a dolphin with doleful lances, *Left: vanguard; named  
 strong; edged  
 swollen*  
 2055 In sign that our soveraign shold be destroyed,  
 And all done of dayes, with distics of swordes,  
 For there is nought but dede there the dragon is raised! *Devouring; expression  
 death*
- Then the comlich king castes in fewier,  
 With a cruel launce coupes fell even *strike exactly*
- 2060 Aboven the spayne a span, among the short ribbes,<sup>1</sup> *piece of armor plate*  
 That the splent and the spleen on the spere lenges!  
 The blood sprent oat and spreddie as the horse springes,  
 And he sproules full spakely, but spekes he no more!  
 And thus han Sir Valiant holden his avowes,  
 2065 And vanquisht the Viscount that victor was holden!
- 2070 Then Sir Ewain fitz Urien full enkerly rides  
 Anon to the Emperour his egle to tosch;  
 Through his brede bataill he buskes belive,  
 Braides out his brand with a blithe cheer,  
 Reversed it redily and away rides,  
 Ferkes in with the fowl in his fair handes,  
 And fittes in frely on front with his feees. *eagerly  
 eagle  
 hurried quickly  
 Drawn  
 Goes; i.e., the eagle  
 companions*
- Now buskes Sir Launcelot and braides full even *hurries; pulls*

<sup>1</sup> Six inches above the waist, between the short ribs

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

	To Sir Lucius the lord and lothly him hittes;	
2075	Through paunce and plates he perced the mailles That the proud pensel in his pausch leuges!	stomach guard; pierced pennon came
	The hed haled out behind an half foot large,	
	Through hawkbok and haunch with the hard wepen;	
	The steed and the steres man strikes to the ground.	(Lancelot) strikes
2080	Strak down a standard and to his stale wendes!	struck; company
	"Me likes well," says Sir Lot, "yon lordes are delivered? fulfilled fheir vows The lot leuges now on me, with leve of my lord; Today shall my name be laid, and my life after, But some lepe fro the life that on you land hoves!"	laid low leap; stand
2085	Then stroketh the storen and straines his bridle. <sup>1</sup> Strikes into the stour on a steed rich, Enjoined with a glaunt and jagged him through!	battle Engaged; slashed
	Jollily this gentle knight for joasned another, Wrought wayes full wide, warrayand knyghtes,	outjoined attacking
2090	And wounded all wathely that in the way standes! Fightes with all the trap a farlong of way, Felled fele upon feld with his fair wepen, Vanquisht and has the victory of valiast knyghtes,	wofully troop many
	And all enverouned the vale and void when him liked.	rode around; left
2095	Then bowmen of Bretaine brothele there-after Bekered with brigandes of fer in tho landes; <sup>2</sup> With fletches fletched they flit full freshly thir frekes,	quickly
	Fichen with fetheres through the fine mailles;	Pierce; feathers
	Such flytting is foal that so the flesh deres,	contention; burns
2100	That flow a ferrom in flanke of steedes. Dartes the Dutch-men delten againes, With derf distes of dode dagges through sheldes;	flew; from afar Germans; dealt; in return
	Quarrels quaintly quappes through knyghtes. <sup>3</sup>	cut

<sup>1</sup> Then rather the readiest man and gripe his bridle

<sup>2</sup> Fought with foot-soldiers (brigands) from afar in those lands; / With feathered arrows they very eagerly shot those men

<sup>3</sup> Crossbow bolts skillfully whip through knyghtes

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- With iron so wekerly that wink they never. swifly  
 2105 So they shriked for shot of the sharp arrows,  
 That all the sheltron shant and shuddered at ones; troop hung back  
 The rich steedes repended and rashes on armes, buck; rush  
 The hole hundred on hie upos hethe ligges; whole; hastily; heath  
 But yet the hathelost on hie, bethen and other, most noble hastily  
 2110 All hourshes over hede, armes to work. rush  
 And all these gigantes before, engendered with fendes,  
 Joines on Sir Jonathal and gentle knyghtes, Attack  
 With clubbes of clene steel clanked in helmes,  
 Crashed down crestes and crashed braines,  
 2115 Killed coursers and covend steedes, assured  
 Chopped through chevalers on chalk-white steedes;  
 Was never steel ne stede might stand them againes,  
 But stonays and strikes down that in the stale hoves, assault; troop  
 Til the conquerour come with his keen knyghtes.  
 2120 With cruel counteraunce he cried full loud:  
 "I wend no Bretors wolde be bashed for so little,  
 And for bare-legged boyes that on the bente hoves!" supposed; abashed  
knave; remain
- He clykes out Caliburn, full clelich barisht,  
 Graithes him to Golopas, that gryved him most,  
 2125 Cutes him even by the knees clely in sonder;  
 "Come down," quod the king, "and carp to thy feses!  
 Thou art too high by the half, I hate thee in trouth!  
 Thou shall be handsomer in hie, with the help of my Lord!" promise  
hastily  
struck  
 With that steelen brand he stroke off his hed.
- 2130 Sterealy in that storar he strikes another.  
 Thus he settes on seven with his seker knyghtes;  
 Whiles sixty were served so be sesed they never,  
 And thus at this joising the gigantes are destroyed,  
 And at that jourcee for-jousted with gentle knyghtes. did not chase  
encounter  
outjousted
- 2135 Then the Romanes and the renkes of the Round Table  
 Rewles them in array, rewarde and other, Arrange  
worked  
 With wight wepenes of war they wroughten on helmes,  
 Rimes with rank steel full real mailles Rip  
 But they fit them fair, these frek bernes,  
 2140 Fowlers in frely on feraunt steedes ordered themselves; bold  
fix lances; iron-gray

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

	Poines full felly with blishand spores, Pretten off ceffrayes fast upon sheldes;	Darl; fiercely; flashing Cut; gold ornament; fastened
	So fele Fey is in fight upon the feld leved That ech a firth in the firth of red blood runnes.	
2145	By that swifely on swarth the swet is believed, Swordes swangen in two, switland knighes Lies wide open welterand on walopand steedes; Woundes of wale men workand sides, Faces fettelec unfair in fettered lockes,	every stream; forest By then; ground; lifeblood swung; dying rolling about; galloping choice; paining enclosed; mated
2150	All crayed, for-trodden with trapped steedes, <sup>1</sup> The fairest on folde that figured was ever. As fer as a furlong, a thousand at ones!	earth; created
	By then the Romases were rebuked at little, Withdrawes them dreyly and dreches so lenge;	somewhat drearly; delay
2155	Our prince with his power perceves them after, Prikes on the proudest with his pris knighthes, Sir Kayoss, Sir Clegis, Sir Cleremond the noble, Encounters them at the cliff with clene men of armes; Fightes fast in the firth, frithes no wepen,	perman
2160	Felled at the first come five hundred at ones! And when they fande them for-set with our fers knighthes,	spares
	Few men again fele mot flich them better, Fightes with all the frap, foynes with spores,	found; blockaded against many must pierce
	And fought with the frekkest that to Fraunce longes.	troop, duel boldly
2165	But Sir Kayoss the keen castes in fewter, Chases on a courser and to a king rides; With a lance of Lettow he thirles his sides	Lithuania; pierces
	That the liver and the lunges on the lance longes;	
	The shaft shudderred and shot in the shire borne,	shining armor
2170	And sought throughout the shield and in the shalk restes. But Kayoss at the in-come was kepted unfair With a coward knight of the kith rich;	were; man
	At the turning that time the traitour him hit In through the felettes and in the flank after	entry
2175	That the busious launce the bewelles entamed.	lance wild; bowels pierced

<sup>1</sup> All crushed, stamp'd to death by armored steeds

Alliterative *Morte Arthur*

- |      |  |  |
|------|--|--|
|      | That brasic at the bawling and broke in middes.<br>Sir Kayous knew well by that kidd wound<br>That he was dede of the dint and donec out of life;<br>Then he rakes in array and on row rides,              | <i>middle</i><br><i>infamous</i>   |
| 2180 | On this real renk his dede to revenge:<br>"Keep thee, coward!" he calleth him soon,<br>Cleves him with his cleere brand clenlich in sonder:<br>"Had thou well dealt thy dint with thy handes,              | <i>goes: at the rank</i><br><i>royal person</i>  |
|      | I had forgiven thee my dede, by Crist now of heven!"   | <i>death</i>   |
| 2185 | He wendes to the wise king and wistly him greetes:<br>"I am wathely wounded, waecsh mon I never;<br>Work now thy worship, as the world askes,<br>And bring me to burial; bid I no more.                    | <i>pleasantly</i><br><i>woefully; recover may</i><br><i>requires</i><br><i>ask</i>                         |
| 2190 | Greet well my lady the queen, yif thee world happen,<br>And all the burlich birdes that to her bower longes;<br>And my worthily wife, that wrathed me never,<br>Bid her for her worship work for my soul!" | <i>if you serve</i><br><i>mately maid</i><br><i>worthy; angered</i>  |
|      | The kinges confessour come with Crist in his handes,<br>For to comfort the knight, kend him the wordes;  | <i>i.e., the Host</i>  |
| 2195 | The knight covered on his knees with a knaut here,<br>And caught his Creatour that comforts us all.<br>Then roses the rich king for rewth at his here,<br>Rides into rout his dede to revenge.             | <i>bold; i.e., absolution</i><br><i>arose to; stood</i><br><i>bellow</i>                                   |
| 2200 | Pressed into the plump and with a prince meetes<br>That was eier of Egypt in those este marches,<br>Cleves him with Caliburn clenlich in sonder!   | <i>crowd</i><br><i>hair; east</i><br><i>Excalibur</i>  |
|      | He broches even through the berne and the saddle bristles,<br>And at the back of the blook the bewelles entamed!   | <i>bowels pierced</i>  |
| 2205 | Manly in his malencoly he meetes another,<br>The middle of that mighty that him much grieved<br>He merkes through the mailles the middes in sonder,<br>That the middes of the man on the mount falles,     | <i>rage (melancholy)</i>   |
|      | The other half of the haunch on the horse leved;<br>Of that hurt, as I hope, heles he never!   | <i>slashes; middle</i><br><i>ground</i>  |
| 2210 | He shot through the sheltrons with his sharp wepons,<br>Shalkes he shredeth and shrinked mailles;<br>Banners he bore down, brittened sheldes;  | <i>other; remained</i><br><i>suppose</i><br><i>troops</i><br><i>Men; cut; wrinkled</i><br><i>destroyed</i> |

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- Brothely with brown steel his brethe he there wrekis;  
Wrothely he writhes by wightness of strenghe,  
2215 Woundes these widerwinnes, warrayed knyghtes  
Threped through the thickes thriteen sithes,  
Thringes throlly in the throng and chis even after!
- shining: anger  
Wrathfully  
adversaries; attacked  
Fought; crowd; times  
Presses hard; pushes
- Then Sir Gawain the good with worshipful knyghtes  
Wendes in the avantward by tho wood hemmes,  
2220 Was ware of Sir Lucius on land there he hoves  
With lordes and lego-men that to himself longed.  
Then the Emperour enkerly askes him soon:  
"What will thou, Wawain? Work for thy wepen?  
I wot by thy wavering thou wilnes after sorrow;  
2225 I shall be wroken on thee, wretch for all thy grete woodes!"
- vanguard; edge  
eagerly  
do you want  
roving want  
avenged
- He laght out a long swerd and lashed on fast,  
And Sir Lionel in the land lordly him strikes,  
Hittes him on the hed that the helm brisses,  
Hurtes his herse-pan as hand-bred large!  
2230 Thus he layes on the lump and lordly them served,  
Woounded worthily worshipful knyghtes.  
Fightes with Florest, that best is of swordes,  
Til the fomand blood til his fist rannes!
- took out; dashed  
skull; hand's breadth deep  
crowd  
foaming
- Then the Romans releved that ere were rebuked,  
2235 And all toraties our men with their reste horses;  
For they see their cheftain be chaufed so sore,  
They chase and chop down our chevalrous knyghtes!  
Sir Bedvire was borne through and his boote thirled  
With a burlich brand, brode at the hiltes;
- railed  
scattered; nested  
bothered  
pierced
- 2240 The real rank steel to his herse rannes,  
And he rashes to the erthe; rowth is the more!
- noble stout sword  
sorrow is the greater
- Then the conquerour took keep and come with his strenghes  
To rescue the rich men of the Round Table,  
To ostrayre the Emperour, yif auarter it shew,  
2245 Even to the egle, and "Arthur!" ascries.  
The Emperour then eagerly at Arthur he strikes,  
Awkward on the umbree, and eagerly him hittes;
- outrage; chance  
Giantwise;visor

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- The naked sword at the nose noyes him sore; assays  
 The blood of the bold king over the breste runnes,  
 Bebledde at the brode shield and the bright mailles!  
 Our bold king bowes the blonk by the bright bridle,  
 With his burlich brand a buffet him reches  
 Through the breasy and breste with his bright wepes;  
 O slant down fro the slot he slittes him at ones!
- 2255 Thus endes the Emperour of Arthure handes,  
 And all his austere host there-of were affrayed.
- Now they ferk to the firth, a few that are leved,  
 For ferdness of our folk, by the fresh strandes; fear  
 The flower of our fees men on feraunt stedes  
 Followes frekly on the frekes that frayed was never.  
 Then the kidd conquerour cries full loud:  
 "Cosin of Cornwall, take keep to thyselfen  
 That no capitain be keepeid for none silver,  
 Ere Sir Kayous dede be cruelly venged!"
- 2265 "Nay," says Sir Cador, "so me Crist help!  
 There ne is kaiser ne king that under Crist regnes  
 That I ne shall kill cold-dede by craft of my handes!"
- There might men see cheftains on chalk-white steedes  
 Chop down in the chace chevalry noble,  
 Romanes the richest and real kinges,  
 Braste with rank steel their ribbes in sonder.  
 Braines forbrusten through burnisht helmes,  
 With brandes forbrisen on brode in the landes; burn into pieces  
 They hewed down hethen men with hilted swordes,  
 By hole hundrethes on hie by the holt eves; haultily; edges of the wood  
 There might no silver them save ne succour their lives. ransom  
 Sowdan, ne Sarazet, ne senaour of Rome.
- 2280 Then relieves the renkes of the Round Table,  
 By the rich river that runnes so fair;  
 Lodges them lovely by tho lighte strandes,  
 All on lowe in the land, those lordlich bernes.  
 They kaine to the carriage and took what them likes,

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

	Camels and cokadrisses and coffers full rich, Hackes and hakenays and horses of armes,	cockadises (crocodiles) Work horses
2285	Hoasing and herberge of bethen kinges; They drew out dromedaries of diverse lordes, Moilles milk-white and marvelous bestes, Offendes and arrabyx and olyfaunes noble That are of the Orient with honourable kinges.	Judging Males; beasts <i>Camels; Arabian horses; elephants</i>
2290	But Sir Arthur anon ayeres thereafter Even to the empereour with honourable kinges, Laght him up full lovelyly with lordlich knighthes, And led him to the layer there the king ligges. Then harawdes hiely at best of the lordes,	advances nesting place
2295	Hustes up the haythemen that on height ligges, The Sowdan of Surry and certain kinges, Sixty of the chef senatours of Rome. Then they buskes and bawmed thir burlich kinges, Sewed them in sendell sixty-fold after.	hastily quickly; command heathens
2300	Lapped them in lede, less that they sholde Change or chauffe yif they might escheve <sup>1</sup> Closed in kestes close unto Rome, With their banners aboven, their badges there-under, In what countree they kaire, that knighthes might know	enveloped; these strong fine linen Wrapped; lead
2305	Ech king by his colours, in kith where he leaged.	enclosed in chess
	Anon on the second day, soon by the moen, Two senatours there come and certain knighthes, Hoodless fro the hethe, ovethe the holt-eves, Bare-foot over the bensie with brandes so rich.	immediately at dawn wood's edge ground
2310	Bowes to the bold king and biddes him the hilies, Whether he will hang them or hedde or hold them on life, Kneeled before the conquerour in kirtels alone, With careful countenaunce they carpod these wordes:	offer behind gowns (i.e., without armor)
2315	"Two senatours we are, thy subjetes of Rome, That has saved our life by these salt strandes, Hid us in the high wood through the helping of Crist.	subjects

<sup>1</sup> *Spoil or not before they could arrive*

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

Beseekes thee of succour, as sovereign and lord;  
Grant us life and limm with liberal herie,  
For His love that thee leste this lordship in erthe!"

*succour*

*limm*

*granted*

- 2320 "I graunt," quod the good king, "through grace of myselfen;  
I give you life and limm and leve for to pass.  
So ye do my message menskfully at Rome." *Providing honorably*  
That ilke charge that I you give here before my chef knyghtes."

"Yes," says the senatours, "that shall we ensure,  
2325 Sekerly by our trewthes, thy sayinges to fulfill; *pledged words*  
We shall let for no lede that lives in erthe,  
For pope ne for ponteface ne prince so noble,  
That ne shall lely in land thy letteres prosoance,  
For duke ne for dousper, to die in the pain!" *pontiff*

- 2330 Then the bannerettes of Bretia brought them to tents  
There barbours were boun with basins on loft;  
With warm water, twis, they wet them full soon;  
They shoven these shalkes shapely thereafter  
To reckon these Romanes recreant and yolden  
2335 Foethy shone they them to shew for skomfit of Rome.  
They coupled the kesters on camelics belive,  
On asses and astrybes, these honourable kings;  
The Emperour for honour all by him one,  
Even upon an olyfaunt, his egle out over;

*barbours; ready*

*shaved; now; suitably*

*mark; surrendered*

*shaved; discomfiture*

*cheat; quickly*

*Arabian horses*

2340 Bekend them the captives, the king did himselfen,  
And all before his keen men carped these wordes:  
"Here are the kesters," quod the king, "kaice over the monties,

*Elephant*

*chess*

Mette full monse that ye have mikel yerned,  
The tax and the tribute of ten score winteres

*Measured; money; much*

2345 That was teenfully tyme in time of our elders;  
Say to the senatour the citoe that yemes  
That I send him the sum; assay how him likes!

*painfully lost*

*control*

But bid them never be so bold, whiles my blood regnes  
Eft for to brawl them for my brode landes,

*family*

*Again*

2350 Ne to ask tribute ne tax by nokes title,  
But such tresare as this, whiles my time lastes."

*no kind of*

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- Now they rakk to Rome the rediest wayes  
 Knelles in the Capitol and commoun assenbles,  
 Sovereignes and senatours the citee that yemes.  
 Bekend them the carriage, kesters and other,  
 Als the conquerour comande with cruel wordes:  
 "We have traxilly travailed this tribute to fetch,  
 The tax and the tewrage of foare sone winneres,  
 Of England, of Ireland and all thir out-iles,  
 That Arthur in the Occident occupies at ones.  
 He biddes you never be so bold whiles his hood regnes  
 To brawl you for Bretaine ne his brode landes,  
 Ne ask him tribute ne tax by nokes title  
 But such treasure as this, whiles his time lastes.  
 We have foughten in Fraunce and us is foul happened,  
 And all our much fair folk fey are believed;  
 Escaped there ne chevalry ne cheftaines nother,  
 But chopped down in the chase, such chaunce is befallen!  
 We rede ye store you of stome and stuffen your walles;  
 You wakens wandreth and war, be ware if you likes!"
- In the kalendas of May this case is befallen;  
 The roial renowned with his Round Table  
 On the coise of Constantine by the clere strandes  
 Has the Romances rich rebuked for ever!
- When he had foughten in Fraunce and the feld weasen  
 And fersely his fomes felid out of life,  
 He bides for the burying of his bold knighthes,  
 That in batall with brandes were brought out of life.  
 He buries at Bayonne Sir Bedwere the rich;  
 The coise of Kayous the keen at Came is believed,  
 Covered with a crystal cleynly all over;  
 His fader conquered that kith knightly with handes.  
 Senn in Burgoinc he badde to bury mo knighthes,  
 Sir Berade and Bawdwyne, Sir Bedwar the rich,  
 Good Sir Cador at Came, as his kind askes.
- Then Sir Arthur apon in the Augste thereafter,  
 Enteres to Almaine with hontes arrayed,
- quicker  
*Ring bell's*  
*rule*  
*Gave; baggage, chest*  
*worked*  
*tribute*  
*those; outer isles*  
*no kind of*  
*escaped; neither*  
*awaken trouble*  
*first day*  
*Connivis*  
*filled*  
*Came; left*  
*Burgundy; abode; more*  
*Came; race requires*  
*Austum*  
*Germany*

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- Lenes at Lusheburgh to lechen his knyghtes,  
With his lele lege-men as lord in his own;  
2390 And on Cristofer day a counsel he holdes  
With kinges and kaisers, clerkes and other,  
Commaundes them keenly to cast all their wittes  
How he may conquer by craft the kith that he clamest;  
But the conquerour keen, courtis and noble,  
2395 Carpes in the counsel these knyghtly wordes:  
"Here is a knight in these cleves, enclosed with hilles,  
That I have covet to know because of his wordes,  
That is Loerraine the lele, I keep not to laine.  
The lordship is lovely, as ledes me telles;  
2400 I will that duchy devise and dele as me likes,  
And seyn dress with the duke, if destany suffer;  
The resk rebel has been unto my Round Table,  
Redy ay with Romances to riot my landes.  
We shall reckon full rathe, if reson so happen,  
2405 Who has right to that rent, by rich God of heven!  
Then will I by Lombardy, likand to shew,  
Set law in the land that last shall ever.  
The tyranies of Tuscan tempest a little,  
Talk with the temporal, whiles my time lastes;  
2410 I give my protection to all the pope landes,  
My rich penant of pecs my poplic to shew.  
It is a folly to offend our fader under God  
Other Peter or Paul, tho posties of Rome;  
If we spare the spiritual we speed but the better;  
2415 Whiles we have for to speke, spill shall it never!"<sup>1</sup>

Now they speed at the spurren withouten speche more,  
To the march of Meyes, these manlich knyghtes,  
That is in Lorraine alosed as London is here,  
Ciske of that seignour that sovereign is holden.  
2420 The king ferkes forth on a fair steed  
With Ferrer and Ferawnte and other four knyghtes;  
About the ciske tho seven they sought at the next,

Luxembourg; heel

own (realm)

July 23

valleys

desire

take care not to deceive

men

divide; deal out

deal; destiny allow

to ravage

pleasing to see

Tuscany; trouble

temporal lords (lay rulers)

pennant; peace

father

Either; spouses

succor

region; Merz; manly

praised

lord

nearest (way)

<sup>1</sup> While I have power to speak, the Church's possessions shall never be harmed

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- To seek them a seker place to set with engincs.  
 Then they bended in burgh bowes of vise,  
 2425 Bokers at the bold king with busious lates,  
 Alblawsters at Arthur egerly shootes  
 For to hurt him or his horse with that hard wopen.  
 The king shant for no shot ne no sheld askes,  
 But shows him sharply in his sheen weedes,  
 2430 Leinges all at leisere and lookes on the walles  
 Where they were lowest the ledes to assaile.
- "Sir," said Sir Ferrer, "a folly thou workes,  
 Thus naked in thy noblay to nigh to the walles,  
 Singly in thy succote this citoe to reche  
 2435 And shew thee within there to shend us all;  
 Hie us hastily hence or we mon foal happen,  
 For hit they thee or thy horne, it harmes for ever!"
- "If thou be ferde," quod the king, "I rede thee ride atter,  
 Less that they rew thee with their round wopen.  
 2440 Thou art bat a fauneklein, no ferly me thinkes!  
 Thou will be flayed for a fly that on thy flesh lightes!  
 I am nothing aghast, so me God help!  
 Though vach gadlings be greved, it greves me but little;  
 They win no worship of me, but wastes their tackle;  
 2445 They shall want ere I wend, I wagea mine heved!  
 Shall never harlot have happe, through help of my Lord,  
 To kill a crownd king with crismoun annoisted!"
- Then come the herbarious, hatageous knyghtes,  
 The hole batailes on hie harraunt thereafter,  
 2450 And our forreours fers upon fele halles  
 Come byand before on feraunt steedes,  
 Ferkaund in array, thir real knyghtes,  
 The renkes renowned of the Round Table!  
 All the frek men of Fraunce followed thereafter,
- Fair fitted on front and on the feld boves.  
 Then the shalkes sharply shifftes their horses,  
 2455 To shewes them seemly in their sheen weedes;  
 Buskes in bataile with banners displayed,
- secure; siege engines  
 town cross bows  
 Shoot; hostile expressions  
 Archers (crossbowmen)  
 hung back  
 leisure  
 nobleness  
 survivor (i.e., without armor)  
 to show within; shame  
 honor; must  
 further back  
 fist; harm  
 baby; wonder  
 afraid  
 worthless men  
 equipment  
 Jack (equipment); wager  
 rascal; fortune  
 holy oil  
 result; violent  
 in haste shouting  
 foragers; many sides  
 iron-grey  
 Going; these  
 men

Alliterative Morte Arthure

	With brode sheldes embraced and burlich helmes, With pensoms and pensells of like prince armes, Apparellid with perly and precious stones; The launces with loraines and lemand sheldes, Lighenand as the leveting and lemand all over;	on their arms; stately pensoms; pennants pearls pennons; shining flashing; lightning; gleaming
2460	Then the pris men prikes and proves their horses, Satilles to the citee upon sere halves; Enserches the suburbs sadly thereafter, Discoveres of shot-men and skirmish a little, Scares their skotifers and their scouf-watches	Converge on; many Search; carefully archers shield bearers; guards barriers
2465	Britteneis their barbers with their bright wemens, Bette down a barbican and the bridge winnes; Ne had the garison been good at the grete gates, They had won that worne by their own strengel	Bast; main gate tower <i>Nad not; garrison</i> dwelling; own
2470	Then with-drawes our men and dresses them better, For drede of the draw-bridge dashed in-sonder: <sup>1</sup>	
2475	Hies to the herberage there the king boves With his batall on high, horset on steedes.	<i>lodging</i>
	Then was the prince parveyed and their places somen, Right pavilions of gall and plattes in segt. <sup>2</sup>	
2480	Then lenge they lordly as them lef thought, Watches in ilke ward, as to the war fallas, Settes up sodenly certein cagines.	<i>as seemed good to them</i> <i>siege engines</i>
	On Sononday by the sun has a fletche yolden, <sup>3</sup> The king callis on Florest, that flour was of knyghtes:	
2485	"The Fraunchmen esfeeblesches; ne ferly me thinkes! They are unfonded folk in tho fair marches, For them wantes the flesh and food that them likes. Here are forestes fair upon sole halves,	<i>King [of Lorraine]</i> grow feeble; no wonder wearied (i.e., weakened) is lacking to them
	And thider domen are fled with freelich bestes.	<i>noble beasts</i>
2490	Thou shall founde to the felle and forray the mountes: Sir Ferawne and Sir Floridas shall follow thy bridle.	<i>go; mountains; forage</i>

<sup>1</sup> For fear of being dashed asunder by the draw bridge

<sup>2</sup> Pitched tents of silk and placed (themselves) in siege

<sup>3</sup> On Sunday by the time the sun give out a flood of light

*Alliterative More Arthur*

- Us mōte with some fresh mete refresh our pople  
That are fed in the firth with the fruit of the erthe.  
There shall wend to this viage Sir Gawayn himselfen,  
Warden full worshipful, and so him well seemes;  
2495 Sir Wechard, Sir Walter, these worshipful knighthes,  
With all the wisest men of the west marches,  
Sir Clegis, Sir Claribald, Sir Cleremond the noble,  
The Capitain of Cardiff, clelich arrayed.  
Go now, warn all the watch, Gawayn and other,  
2500 And wendes forth on your way withouten mo wordes."

- Now ferkes to the firth these fresh men of armes,  
To the felle so fawe, these freshlich bernes,  
Through hoppes and hemland, hilles and other,  
Holties and hore woodes with hestin shawes,  
2505 Through morass and moss and mountes so high,  
And in the misty morning on a mede fallas,  
Mowen and unmade, mainrowed but little.<sup>1</sup>  
In swathes sweppen down, full of sweet floweres;  
There unbridels these bold and baites their horses.  
2510 To the gryng of the day that birdes gan sing  
Whiles the sours of the sun, that sande is of Crist,  
That solaces all sinful that sight has in erthe.

- Then wendes out the warden, Sir Gawayn himselfen,  
Als he that wise was and wight, wonders to seek;  
2515 Then was he ware of a wye, wonder well armed,  
Saitand on a water bank by the wood eves,  
Basked in bresy bright to behold,  
Embraced a brode shield on a blōk rich,  
Withouten any berne, but a boy one.  
2520 Hoves by him on a blōk and his spere holdes.  
He bore gessenande in gold three grayhounds of sable,  
With chappes and chaines of chalk-white silver,

<sup>1</sup> (*The hay*) mown and unstacked, worked over but little; / In rows of cuttings swept down, full of sweet flowers

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

A charbocle is the chef, changand of hewes,<sup>1</sup>  
And a chef auerous, challenge who likes.

2525	Sir Gawayn gliftes on the gome with a glad will; A grete spere from his groem he griffes in handes, Girdes even over the streme on a steed rich To that steren in stour on strenghe there he hoves. <sup>2</sup> Egerly on English "Arthur!" he ascries.	looks; man Goes right
2530	The tother ironly answers him soon On the lange of Lorraine with a loud siven That ledes might listen the lenghe of a milie: "Whider prikes thou, pilout, that proffers so large? Here pickes thou no prey, proffer when thee likes,	other language; voice hear; length spur; soldier
2535	But thou in this peril get of the better, Thou shall be my prisoner for all thy proud lates!"	Unless; i.e., fight better appearance
2540	"Sir," says Sir Gawayn, "so me God help, Such glaverand gomes greves me bat little! But if thou graith the gere thee will gref happena Ere thou go of this greve, for all thy grete wordes!"	chattering prepare; gear from; grove
2545	Then their launces they lachen, these lordlich bernes, Laggen with long speres on liard steedes, Cuppen at auerous by cratnes of armes Til both the cruel speres bristen at ones;	seize lay on; gray Strike at random break
2550	Through sheldes they shot and sheer'd through mailles, Both sheer through sholders a shaft-monde large. Thus worthily these wyes wounded are bothen; Ere they wreke them of wrath away will they never.	cat span (six inches) deep
	Then they raignt in the rein and again rides, Readily these rathe men rushes out swordes, Hittes on helmes full hertilich distes, Hewes on hawberkes with full hard wepes!	pulled hasty
	Full stoutly they strike, thir steren knyghtes,	there

<sup>1</sup> A carbuncle is in the chief (upper third of the shield), changing in color; / And (the way) an adventurous chief, challenge him who will

<sup>2</sup> To that man, steadfast in battle, strongly he standis

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

	Stokes at the stomach with steelen pointes,	Thrust
2555	Fighten and flourish with flamand swedes,	pass
	Til the flames of fire flames on their helmes.	
	Then Sir Gawain was greved and grousched full soee;	angered
	With Galath his good sword grimly he strikes,	
	Cleef the knighthes shield clenlich in sonder.	Cleaved
2560	Who lookes to the left side, when his horse launches,	
	With the light of the sun men might see his liver.	
	Then grones the gone for gref of his woundes,	groans
	And girdes at Sir Gawain as he by glentes,	strikes; goes
	And awkward egerly sore he him seistes;	slavishly
2565	As alet esameid he oches in sonder,	shoulder place; hacks
	Bristes the renbrace with the brand rich,	upper-arm place
	Carves off at the coutere with the cleene edge	elbow pierce
	Ascentis the avasbrace vailed with silver; <sup>1</sup>	
	Through a double vesture of velvet rich	
2570	With the venomous sword a vein has he touched	empties
	That voides so violently that all his wit changed;	visor, lower face-guard
	The vesar, the aventail, his vestures rich	spoured
	With a valiant blood was verred all over.	
	Then this tyraunt tite turns the bridle,	quickly
2575	Talkes un tenderly and says: "Thou art touched!	
	Us bes have a blood-band ere thy blee change! <sup>2</sup>	
	For all the barbours of Bretaine shall not thy blood staunch, <i>barbers (surgeons)</i>	
	For he that is blemist with this broad brande blane shall he never! <sup>3</sup>	
	"Ye," quod Sir Gawain, "thou gaves me but little.	
2580	Thou weenes to glopis me with thy grete woodes;	think to trifly
	Thou trowes with thy talking that my herte talmes;	suppose; falshes
	Thou betides torfer ere thou heyne turn	trouble; hence
	But thou tell me tite and tarry no lenger	quickly
	What may staunch this blood that thus fast rannes."	

<sup>1</sup> Near the lower arm plate, veiled with silver

<sup>2</sup> We must have a bandage, ere your color changes

<sup>3</sup> For he who is wounded with this broad sword shall never cease bleeding!

Alliterative Morte Arthure

- 2585 "Yis, I say thee soothly and seker thee my trewth,  
 No surgeon in Salerne shall save thee the better,  
 With-thy that thou suffer me for sake of thy Crist  
 To shew shortly my shrift and shape me for mine end." *pledge my word to you  
 (see note)  
 Providing; allow  
 confession; prepare*
- "Yis," quod Sir Gawayne, "so me God help,  
 2590 I give thee grace and graunt, though thou have gref served,<sup>1</sup>  
 With-thy thou say me sooth what thou here seekes.  
 Thus singly and solain all thyself one,  
 And what lay thou loves on — laise not the sooth —  
 And what legeaunce and land and where thou art lord." *Providing  
 alone  
 religion; believe; hide  
 allegiance*
- 2595 "My name is Sir Priamus, a prince is my fader,  
 Praised in his partyes with proved kinges;  
 Is Rome there he regnes he is rich holden;  
 He has been rebel to Rome and riddan their landes,  
 Warrayand wisely winters and yeres. *father  
 country; experienced*
- 2600 By wit and by wisdom and by wight strenghe  
 And by worshipful war his oewen has he won.  
 He is of Alexander blood, overling of kinges;  
 The uncle of his aicle, Sir Ector of Troy.  
 And here is the kareden that I am of come, *overlord  
 grandfather; Hector  
 family*
- 2605 Of Judas and Josue, these gentle knighthes;  
 I am apparent his cier, and eldes of other;  
 Of Alexandere and Afrike and all tho out-landes  
 I am in possession and plenerly sesed.  
 Is all the pris citees that to the port longes *Judas Maccabeus; Joshua  
 his heir apparent  
 Alexandria  
 fully in possession*
- 2610 I shall have trewly the treasure and the landes  
 And both tributte and tax whiles my time lastes.  
 I was so hauaigne of herfe whiles I at home lenged  
 I held nose my hip-height under hevene rich;  
 For-thy was I sent hidre with seven score knighthes *haughty  
 as tall as my hip*
- 2615 To assay of this war by seme of my fader;  
 And I am for surgaide shamefully surprised  
 And by auer of armes ostrayed for ever!  
 Now have I told thee the kin that I of come, *experience; attest  
 pride shamefully captured  
 disgraced*

<sup>1</sup> *I give you grace and grant you your life, though you have deserved grief*

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- Will thou for knighthede ken me thy name?" knighthood
- 2620 "By Crist," quod Sir Gawayn, "knight was I never!  
With the kide conquerour a knave of his chamber  
Has wrought in his wardrobe winters and yeres  
On his long armour that him best liked;  
I poine all his pavilions that to himselfe pendas,  
Dightes his doublettes for dukes and erles,  
Aketouns avenaunt for Arthur himselfen  
That he has used in war all these eight winter?  
He made me yomen at Yole and gave me grete gifthes, yeoman (free man); Yole  
An hundred pound, and a horse, and harness full rich."
- 2630 "Yif I hap to my helle that hende for to serve!  
I be holpen in hastie, I hate thee for-sooth!  
If his knaves be such, his knyghtes are noble!  
There is no king under Crist may kemppe with him one!  
He will be Alexander eier that all the world loated,  
Abler than ever was Sir Ector of Troy!  
Now for the crisom that thou caught that day thou was cristened,  
Whether thou be knight or knave knowe now the sooth." battle  
bound to  
holy oil  
acknowledge
- 2640 "My name is Sir Gawayn, I graunt thee for-sooth  
Cousin to the conquerour, he knowes it himselfen,  
Kide in his kalender a knight of his chamber,  
And rold the richest of all the Round Table!  
I am the douspeer and dake he dubbed with his handes  
Daintily on a day before his dese knyghtes;  
Grouch not, good sir, though me this grace happen:  
It is the gift of God; the gree is his owen!" Grudge  
reward
- "Peter!" says Priamus, "now payes me better  
Than I of Provence were prince and of Paris rich!" [it] pleases

<sup>1</sup> If I have the good luck, for my recovery, to serve that noble (Arthur), / I will be quickly cured.  
I tell thee truly

Alliterative Morte Arthur

For me were lever privily be priked to the heote<sup>1</sup>  
Than ever any priker had such a pris wonnen.

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| 2650  | Bat here is herberd at hand in you hage holtes,<br>Hole batailes on high, take heed if thee like!<br>The Duke of Lorraine the derf and his dere knighthes,<br>The doughtiest of Dolfisede and Datch-men many,<br>The lordes of Lombardy that leders are holden,<br>The garrison of Goddard gaylich arrayed.<br>The wyes of the Westfale, worshipful bernes,<br>Of Sessoinc and Suryland Sarazenes ynow; | lodged; woods<br>cruel<br><i>Dauphine (in France)</i><br>leaders<br>garrison; Mt. Goddard<br>Westphalia<br>Saxony; Syria |
| 2655  | The loodes of Lombardy that leders are holden,<br>They are numbered full nigh and named in rollis<br>Sixty thousand and ten, for sooth, of seker men of armes;  |  |
| 2660  | Bat if thou hic fro this hethe, it harmes us bothe,<br>And bat my harnes be soon holpen, hole be I never!<br>Take heed to this hansemen, that he no horn blow,<br>Or thou hiech in hasto bes bewen all to peces.<br>For they are my retinues to ride where I will;  | Unless<br>helped; whole (healthy)<br>servant (henchman)<br>quickly; will be; pieces                                      |
| 2665  | Is none redier renakes regaund in erthe;<br>Be thou right with that rost, thou rides no farther,<br>Ne thou bes never ransouned for riches in erthe!"   | <i>If you are seized by</i>  |
| Sir Gawain went ere the wathe come where him best liked,<br>With this worthilich wye that wounded was sore, |   |  |
| 2670  | Merkes to the mountain there our men lenges<br>Baitand their bloskes there on the brede mode,<br>Lordes lenand low on lemond sheldes,<br>With lowd laughters on left for liking of birdes,<br>Or larkes, of linkwhites, that lovelich songen;   | Gone<br><i>Grazing; mead</i><br><i>Irrawading; gleaming</i><br>lances<br>larks   |
| 2675  | And some was sleight on sleep with slight of the pople <sup>2</sup><br>That sang in the sesous in the sheen shawes,<br>So low in the laundes so likand notes.<br>Then Sir Wicher was ware their warden was wounded<br>And went to him weepand and wringand his handes;  | season; shrub<br>hills; pleasing<br>aware  |

<sup>1</sup> *I would rather be stabbed to the heart in private / Than to have an ordinary soldier win such a prize*

<sup>2</sup> *And some had fallen asleep because of the skillful singing of the creatures*

Alliterative Morte Arthur

- 2680 Sir Wecharde, Sir Walter, these wise men of armes  
Had wonder of Sir Wawain and went him againes,  
Met him in the mid-way and marvel them thought  
How he mastered that man, so mighty of strenghes.  
By all the weith of the world so wo was them never:  
"For all our worship, iwis, away is in erthe!"
- "Greve you not," quod Gawain, "for Goddes love of heven,  
For this is but goscomer and given on erles;      *goscomer; to be expected*  
Though my shoulder be shredre and my sheld thirled,  
And the weld of mine arm workes a little,  
This prisoner, Sir Priamus, that has perilous woundes,  
Says that he has salves shall soften us bothen."
- Then sterites to his stirrup sterenfull knyghtes,  
And he lordly alights and laught off his bridle,  
And set his bretich blonk baike on the flowers,  
Braides off his bacennett and his rich weedes,  
Bounes to his bordc sheld and bowes to the erthe;  
In all the body of that bold is no blood leved!  
Then presses to Sir Priamus precious knyghtes,  
Avisely of his horse heates him in armes      *Carefully off; take*  
2695 His helm and his hawberk they taken off after,  
And basely for his hert all his herte changed;  
They laid him down in the laundes and laught off his weedes,      *lawn*  
And he lened him on long or how him best liked.      *leaned (stretched out)*  
A foil of fine gold they fande at his girdle,      *found*  
2700 That is full of the flower of the four welle  
That flowes out of Paradise when the flood rises,  
That much fruit of falles that feed shall us all;  
Be it frete on his flesh there sinewes are entamed,  
The freke shall be fish-hole within four hours.
- 2705 They uncover that coese with full clene handes,  
With clere water a knight cleanses their woundes,  
Keled them kindly and conforted their herte;  
And when the carves were clene they cledde them again.      *Cooled*  
2710 Barrel-ferrers they broched and brought them the wine.      *wounds; clad*  
Both brede and brawn and bredes full rich;  
When they had eien ason they armed after.
- Wine casks; broke open*  
    *roast; lean meat; breads*  
    *eaten*

*Afliterunne Morte Arthure*

- Then tho aubrend men "To armes!" ascries,  
With a clarious clere thir knigthes togeder  
Calles to counsel and of this case telles:  
those adventuring; *To armes!*  
2720 "Yonder is a company of clese men of armes,  
The keenest in conste that under Crist lenges;  
In yon oken wood as host are arrayed,  
Under-takand men of these oun-landes,  
As says Sir Priamus, so help Saint Peter!  
2725 Go men," quod Garwain, "and grope in your heries  
Who shall graith to yon greve to yon grete lordes;  
If we get-less go home, the king will be greved  
And say we are gadlinges, aghast for a little.  
We are with Sir Florent, as to-day falleis,  
2730 That is flowr of Fraunce, for he fled never;  
He was chosen and charged in chamber of the king  
Cheftain of this journee, with chevaltry noble;  
Whether he fight or he flee we shall follow after;  
For all the fere of yon folk forsake shall I never!"  
2735 "Fader," says Sir Florent, "fall fair ye it tell!  
Bat I am but a fauotkin, unsraisted in armes;  
If any folly befall the fast shall be ours  
And frenemy o Fraunce be flamed for ever!  
Woundes not your worship, my wit is but simple,  
2740 Ye are our warden, iwis; work as you likes."
- "Ye are at the ferrest not passand five hundredth,  
And that is full too few to fight with them all,  
For harlottes and hame-men shall help but little;  
They will hic them hem for all their grete wordes!  
2745 I rede ye work after wit, as wise men of armes,  
And warpes willy away, as worshipful knigthes."
- "I graunt," quod Sir Garwain, "so me God help!  
Bat here are some galliard gomes that of the gree serves,  
The cruellest knigthes of the kinges chamber,  
2750 That can carp with the cup knightly wordes;  
We shall prove today who shall the pris win?"

*trumpet; these*

*army*

*oak*

*Determined*

*search*

*wood*

*empty-handed*

*worthless men*

*fear*

*Father (i.e., Sir)*

*infant; untested*

*foe*

*hostility; chaste*

*(Priamus speaks); most*

*rascals; servants*

*hence*

*according to*

*go with will*

*deserve a reward*

*prius*

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- Now forscours fers unto the firth rides  
 And fanges a fair feld and on foot lightes,  
 Frikes after the prey, as pris men of armes,  
 2755 Florent and Floridas, with five score knighthes,  
 Followed in the forest and on the way founedes,  
 Flingand a fast trot and on the folk drives.  
 Then followes fast to our folk well a five hundreth  
 Of frek men to the firth upon fresh horses;  
 2760 One Sir Peraunt before, upon a fair steed,  
 Was fostered in Famacoste; the fend was his fader;  
 He flinges to Sir Florent and prestly he cries:  
 "Why flees thou, false knight? The Feed have thy soul!"  
 Then Sir Florent was fain and in fewter castes,  
 2765 On Fawcett of Frisland to Peraunt he rides,  
 And right is the rein on the steed rich,  
 And rides toward the rout, restes he no lenger!  
 Full butt in the front he flishes him even,  
 And all disfigures his face with his fell wepen!  
 2770 Through his bright bacenent his brain has he touched,  
 And brushten his neck-bone that all his teeth stopped!
- Then his cosin ascried and cried full loud:  
 "Thou has killed cold-dede the king of all knighthes!  
 He has been frainted on feld in fifteen rewmes;  
 2775 He fand never so freke might fight with him one!  
 Thos shall die for his dode, with my derf wepen,  
 And all the doughty for dole that is yon dale boves!"
- "Py," says Sir Floridas, "thou fleryasd wretch!  
 Thou wecces for to flay us, floke-mouthed shrew!"  
 2780 But Floridas with a sword, as he by glentes,  
 All the flesh of the flank he flappes in sonder  
 That all the filth of the freke and fele of his gutes  
 Followes his sole foot whens he forth rides!
- Then rides a renk to rescue that bese;  
 2785 That was Raynald of the Rodes, and rebel to Crist,  
 Perverted with paynimis that Cristen perniewes,  
 Presses in proudly as the prey wendes,

*fangers*  
*take*

*Dashing at*

*Famacoste (on Cyprus)*  
*quickly*

*eager*  
*(his horse)*  
*pulled*

*Smack-dab; forehead; pierces*  
*cruel weapon*  
*helmet*

*broke; break*

*wound*  
*found*

*snarling*  
*twisted-mouthed*  
*glider*  
*wrangler; wrander*

*horse's*

*man; man*  
*Rhodes*  
*pagan; persecute*

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- For he had in Prusland much pris wonnen;  
For-thy in presence there he proffers so large.  
Prussia; praise (prise)
- 2790 But then a reek, Sir Richere of the Round Table,  
On a real steed rides him againes;  
Through a round red sheld he rushed him soon  
That the rossild spere to his herte rannes!  
The reek recles about and rushes to the erthe,  
Renes full rudly but rode he no more!
- tempered
- Now all that is fere and usfey of these five handreth  
Fallies on Sir Florest and five score knighthes,  
Betwix a plash and a flood, upon a flat land;  
Our folk fangen their feld and fought them againes;  
Then was loud upon loft "Lorraine!" ascried,  
When ledes with long speres lashes togiders,  
And "Arthur!" on our side when them ought ailed.
- ushart; alive  
marshy place  
take  
rush
- Then Sir Florest and Floridas in fewter they cast,  
Freshen on all the frasp and berces affrayed,  
Bush; company
- 2805 Felles five at the front there they first entered  
And, ere they ferke further, fele of these other;  
Brenyes broaden they briste, britened sheldes,  
Berdes and beres down the best that them bides;  
All that rewled in the rost they ridea away,  
So rudely they rere, these real knighthes!
- braided  
nudely; move
- When Sir Priamus, that prisor, perceived their gamen,  
He had pitee in herte that he se darsste proffer;  
sport  
dared
- He went to Sir Gwain and says him these wordes:  
"Thy pris men for thy peoy put are all under;  
They are with Sarazenes over-set, mo than seven handreth  
Of the Sowdanes knighthes, out of scree landes;  
Woide thos suffer me, sir, for sake of thy Crist  
With a sop of thy men suppowel them ones."
- allow me  
small troop; support
- 2815
- "I grouch not," quod Gwain, "the gree is their owea;  
They mon have guardons fell gree graunt of my lord;  
But the frek men of Fraunce fraist themselves;  
Freckes fought not their fill this fifteen winter!"
- grudge; reward  
should; granted by  
But are bold; not

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- I will not stir with my stale half a steed lenghe,  
But they be stede with more stuff than on yon stede boves!"<sup>1</sup>      *troop; length  
beest; place*
- 2825 Then Sir Gawain was ware, withouten the wood-hemmes,  
Wyes of the Westfale, upon wight horses,  
Walopand wodely as the way forther,  
With all the wepons, iwis, that to the war longes;  
The erl Astele the old the avantward he buskes,  
2830 Ayerand on either hand eight thousand knighthes;  
His pelours and pavisers passed all in number  
That ever any prinice lede parveyed in erthe!
- Then the Duke of Lorraine dresses thereafter  
With double of the Dutch-men that doughty were holden,      *double the number*  
2835 Paynims of Prussland, pikers full noble,  
Come prikand before with Priamus knighthes.  
Then said the erl Astele to Algere his brother:  
"Me angors earnestly at Arthures knighthes,  
Thus enkerly on an host auuters themselven!  
2840 They will be outrayed ason, ere undros ring,  
Thus foolily on a feld to fight with as all!  
But they be fesed, in fey, ferly me thinkes;<sup>2</sup>  
Welde they purpose take and pass on their wayes,  
Prik home to their prince and their prey leve,  
2845 They might lengthen their life and losen but little,  
It wolde lighten my herse, so help me our Lord!"      *lengthen; lose*
- "Sire," says Sir Algere, "they have little used  
To be outrayed with host; me angors the moe!  
The fairest shall be full foy that in our flock rides,  
2850 Als few as they ben, ere they the feld leve!"      *be*
- Then good Gawain, gracious and noble,  
All with glorious glee he gladdes his knighthes:  
"Glopins not, good men, for glitterand sheldes,  
Thosgh yon gadlings be gay on yon grete booses!"      *Fear  
worthless men*

<sup>1</sup> If they are not defeated, in faith, it would seem to me a great wonder.

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- |  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| 2855   | Bannercetes of Bretain, bokes up your hertes!<br>Bes not baitt of you boyes ne of their bright weodes!<br>We shall blanke their boste, for all their bold proffer,<br>Als baxom as bird is in bed to her leod!<br>Yif we fight today, the feld shall be ours, | <i>buck up</i><br><i>Be; abashed by; knowes</i><br><i>weaken; boste</i><br><i>submissive; maid</i>                      |
| 2860   | The felik fey shall fail and falsehood be destroyed!<br>You folk is on frontere, untrainted them seemes;<br>They make faith and faye to the Feud selven!<br>We shall in this viage victoires be holden<br>And awaunted with voices of valiant bernes,         | <i>false of faith; falsehood</i><br><i>in front untested</i><br><i>belief</i><br><i>engagement</i><br><i>praised by</i> |
| 2865   | Priased with princes in presence of lordes<br>And loved with ladies in diverse landes!<br>Ought never such honour none of our elders,<br>Uewine ne Absolon ne none of these other!<br>When we are most in distress Marie we mese                              | <i>Possessed</i><br><br><i>pray to</i>  |
| 2870   | That is our master's saine that he much traistis,<br>Meles of that milde queen that menskes us all;<br>Who-so meles of that maid, miscarries he never!"   | <i>saint; trust</i><br><i>Speaks; dignifies</i>   |
| <p>By these wordes were said they were not fer behind,<br/>But the lenghe of a land and "Loerraine!" ascriue;</p>  |   |   |
| 2875   | Was never such a jousting at journee in erthe<br>In the vale of Josephate, as gestes us telles,<br>When Julius and Joatelle were judged to die,<br>As was when the rich men of the Round Table<br>Rushed into the rout on real steedes,                       | <i>length of the field</i><br><br><i>tales</i>  |
| 2880   | For so rathely they rush with rosseld speres<br>That the rascal was rade and ran to the greves,<br>And kained to that court as cowardes for ever!   | <i>twifly; tempered</i><br><i>fearful; wood</i>   |
| <p>"Peter!" says Sir Gawayne, "this gladdes mine herte,<br/>That you gadlings are gone that made grete number!<br/>I hope that these harlotries shall harm us but little,<br/>For they will hide them in hastic in yon holt eyen;<br/>They are fewer on feld than they were first numbered<br/>By fourty thousand, in faith, for all their fair hostes."</p> |   |   |
| 2885   |   | <i>gladdens</i><br><i>worldeless fellow</i><br><i>suppose; low fellow</i>   |
| 2890   | Bat one Jolyas of Gene, a giuant full huge,<br>Has joined on Sir Gerard, a justice of Wales;  | <i>judge</i>  |

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

	Through a jorownde sheld he jagges him through, And a fine geschaunt of gentle mailles; Jointer and gemous he jagges in sonder! On a jambe stood this journee he makes;	grovynge; mail coat of mail Joint; clasp swif
2895	Thus is the gianant fee-jouaste, that erraust Jew, And Gerard is jocouast and joyes him the more.	outjouasted; wandering
	Then the genatours of Gene enjoines at ones And ferkes on the frontere well a five handreth; A freke bight Sir Frederik with full fole other	horse soldiers; Gene front rank named
2900	Ferkes on a fresh and freshlich ascries To fight with our forreours that on feld hoves, And then the real renkes of the Roand Table Rode forth full ernestly and rides them againes,	charge; eagerly foragers
	Melies with the middle-ward, but they were ill-matched, Melies; middle guard	
2905	Of such a gret multitude was marvel to here. Senn at the assemblee the Sarazenes discoveres The sovereign of Sessoine that salved was never;	
	Gianutes for-jouasted with gentle knyghtes Through geschauntes of Gene jagged to the herte!	saved outjouasted by hauberk; Gene haughty
2910	They hew through helmes hastain bernes, That the hilted swordes to their hertes ruanes!	
	Then the renkes renowned of the Round Table Rives and rashes down renayod wretches;	renegade
	And thus they driven to the dede dakes and eries	death
2915	All the dregh of the day, with dredful workes!	length
	Then Sir Priamus the prince, in presence of lordes, Presses to his person and pertly it hentes,	
	Reverted it redily and away rides	pennone; openly reversed
	To the real roost of the Round Table;	
2920	And hieley his retinac raikes him after, For they his reson had redde on his sheld rich.	quickly; rusher reason (intent); read
	Out of the sheltron they shed as sheep of a fold,	pounded; from
	And stocres forth to the stour and stood by their lord.	
	Senn they sent to the duke and said him these wordes:	
2925	"We have been thy soudeours these six yere and more; We forsake thee today by sert of our lord.	mercenaries feudal service
	We sow to our sovereign in sere kinges landes;	follow

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- Us defautes our fee of this four wisteres.  
 Thou art feeble and false and sought but fair wordes;  
 Our wages are wered out and thy war ended;  
 We may with worship wend whither us likes!  
 I rede thou trete of a trewe and trouful so lenger,  
 Or thou shall tane of thy tale ten thousand ere even."      *We lack our pay  
more  
truce; suffice  
lose; number (tally)*
- "*Fy a diables!*" said the duke, "the Devil have your bones!"      *Devil take you*  
 The daunger of you dogges drede shall I never!  
 We shall deale this day by deedes of armes,  
 My dede and my duchery and my dere knigthes;  
 Such souleouers as ye I set but at little,  
 That sodenly in defeat forsakes their loed!"      *bargain for  
diskordom  
mercenaries; reckon  
dispute obligation*
- The duke dresses in his sheld and dreches no lenger,  
 Drawes him a dromodary with dreddful knigthes;  
 Graithes to Sir Gawain with full grete number  
 Of gomes of Gernaide that grevous are holden.  
 Those fresh hoesed men to the front rides,  
 Felles of our forreours by fourty at ones!  
 They had foughten before with a five hundredth:  
 It was no ferly, in faith, though they faint wasen.  
 Then Sir Gawain was greved and grippes his spere,  
 And girdes in again with gallard knigthes,  
 Meetes the Marches of Meyos and melles him through.      *Marquis of Metz; pierces*  
 As man of this middle-erthe that most had greved!  
 But one Chastelayne, a child of the kinges chamber,  
 Was ward to Sir Wawain of the west marches,  
 Chases to Sir Cheldrik, a cheftain noble;  
 With a chasing-spere he shockes him through!  
 This check him escheved by chaunces of armes.  
 So they chase that child: eschape may he never;  
 But one Swyan of Sweey, with a sword edge,  
 The swyers swire-bone he swappes in sonder!  
 He swoonand died and on the swarth lenged,  
 Sweltes even swiftly and swank he no more!      *hunting spear; drives  
defeat; achieved  
escape  
Sweden  
young noble's neck bone  
surf  
Die; worked*
- Then Sir Gawain gretes with his gray eyen;  
 The guite was a good man, beginnand of armes.      *wreps  
youth*

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- For the chery child so his cheer changed  
That the chilland water on his cheekes runned!  
"Wo is me," quod Gawain, "that I ne witten had!"  
I shall wage for that wye all that I weld,  
But I be woken on that wye that thus has him wounded?"  
He dresses him deirly and to the dake rides,  
2965 But one Sir Dolphin the derf dight him againes,  
And Sir Gawain him gird with a grim launce  
That the groanden spere glode to his herfe!  
And egerly he hent out and hart another,  
An hethen knight, Handolf, happy in armes;  
2970 Slyly is at the slot slittes him through  
That the sildand spere of hit hand slippes!  
There is slain in that slope by sleghte of his handes  
Sixty stongen in a slade of sleghen men of armes?  
Though Sir Gawain were wo, he waite him by  
2975 And was ware of that wye that the child wounded,  
And with a sword swiftly he swappes him through,  
That he swiftly swelt and on the erthe swoones!  
And then he raikes to the rout and rusches on helmes,  
Rich hawberkes he rent and rased sheldes;  
2980 Rides on a randoon and his raik holdes;  
Throughout the nerward he holdes wayes,  
And there raght in the reis, this reial the rich,  
And rides into the rost of the Round Table.
- dear  
know  
spend  
avenged  
cruel confronted  
glided  
pulled  
fortunate  
base of throat  
hillside by skill  
along ditch; skilful  
destroyed  
swiftly; course  
powerful noblemen  
i.e., back to
- Then our chevalrous men changen their horses,  
2990 Chases and chopps down cheftaines noble,  
Hilles fall heftely on helmes and sheldes,  
Hartes and hewes down hethen knighes!  
Kettle-hantes they cleve even to the shoulders;  
Was never such a clamour of capitaines in erthe!  
2995 There was kinges sonnes caught, courtails and noble,  
And knighes of the countree that knownen was rich,  
Lordes of Lorraine and Lombardy bothen  
Lught was and led in with our lele knighthes.  
Those that chased that day their chaunce was better;  
3000 Such a check at a chase eschewed them never!
- i.e., kettle-shaped helmets  
Seized  
victory; achieved

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- When Sir Florest by fight had the feld wonnen  
He ferkes in before with five score knighthes;  
Their preyes and their prisoneeres passes on afer,  
With pelours and pavisers and pris men of armes;
- 3005 Then goodly Sir Gawayne guides his knighthes,  
Gos in at the gainest, as guides him telles,  
For gref of a garniso of full grete iordes  
Sholde not grip up his gote ne such gram work;
- 3010 Til his preyes were past the path that he dredes.
- When they the citee might see that the king seded  
(Soothly the same day was with assaut waffen).  
An heraud bies before at besse of the lordes,  
Home at the herberage, out of the high landes,
- 3015 Turnes tite to the tent and to the king telles  
All the tale soothly and how they had sped:  
"All thy foreours are fere that forrayed withouten,  
Sir Florent and Sir Floridas and all thy fers knighthes;
- 3020 They have forrayed and foughten with full grete number  
And fele of thy fo-men has broght out of life!  
Our worshipful wardens is well escheved,  
For he has won today worship for ever;
- 3025 He has Dolphin slain and the duke taken!  
Many doughty is dede by dint of his handes!  
He has prisoners pris, princes and erles.  
Of the richest blood that regnes in erthe;
- 3030 All thy chevalrous men fair are escheved,  
But a child, Chastelain, mischaunce has befallen."
- "Hiratain," says the king, "heraud, by Crist,  
3035 Thou has helde mine herrie, I hete thee for-sooth!  
I give thee in Hampton a hundred pound large!"
- The king ther to assaut he sembles his knighthes  
With somercastel and sowe upon sere halves,  
Shiftes his shottifores and scales the walles,
- 3035 And ech watch has his ward with wise men of armes.  
Then boldly they busk and bendes engines
- assault  
bowmen; shield bearers  
goes; quickest way  
fear; troop  
body; mischief  
pass
- assault  
herald; herald  
to; lodgings  
quickly
- foreigners; safe
- has well succeeded
- Dolphin
- Valiant man; herald  
healed; promise  
(see note)
- assault  
moveable towers; shelters  
Moves about; shield bearers  
division; guard  
catapult

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- Paises in pilotes and proves their castles.  
Ministres and masondowes they mall to the crthe,<sup>1</sup>  
Churches and chapels chalk-white blanched,  
Stone steeples full stiff in the street ligges,  
Chambers with chimneys and many chef inns,  
Pained and pealed down plastered walles;  
The pise of the pople was pisee for to here!
- Then the duchess her dight with damesels rich,  
The countess of Crasne with her clere maidens,  
Kneelees down in the kirmelles there the king hoved,  
On a covered horse comlyly arrayed.  
They knew him by countenaunce and cried full loud:  
"King crowned of kind, take keep to these wordes!"  
We beseech you, sir, as sovereign and lord,  
That ye save us today, for sake of your Crist!  
Send us some succour and saughte with the pople,  
Ere the citee be sodenly with assaut wosnen!"
- He veres his vexar with a voat noble,  
With visage virtuous, this valiant berte,  
Meles to her mildly with full meek wordes:  
"Shall none misdo you, madame, that to me longes;  
I give you charter of pees, and your chef maidens,  
The childer and the chaste men, the chevalrous knyghtes;  
The duke is in daunger; dredes it bat little?  
He shall be deemed full well, dout you sought elles."
- Then sent he on ech a side to certain lordes  
For to leve the assaut; the citee was yolden  
(With the erle eldest son he sent him the keyes)  
And sesed the same night, by sent of the lordes.  
The duke to Dover is dight and all his dere knyghtes,  
To dwell in daunger and dole the dayes of his life.
- There fled at the ferror gate folk withouten number.

*Brave; pellet; ivy*

*painted*

*chimneys*

*Demolished; struck*

*pain*

*bastements*

*armored*

*by right; heed*

*make peace*

*assault*

*arm'd up; visor; expression*

*i.e., priests*

*doubt*

*fear*

*painted*

*mind; answer*

*further*

<sup>1</sup> Monasteries and hospitals they hammer to earth

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

	For ferd of Sir Florent and his fers knyghtes;	fear
3070	Voides the citeme and to the wood rusnes With vitail and vessel, and vescare so rich; They buss up a banner aboven the brode gates. Of Sir Florest, in fay, so fain was he never!	richels; precious vessels
	The knyght hoves on a hill, beheld the walles, And said: "I see by yoa signe the citeme is oures!"	Happy
3075	Sir Arthur estees anon with hostes arrayed, Even at the andron cities to lenger. In ech levere on loud the king did cry	andron (9 a.m.); intervals
	On pain of life and limm and lessing of landes	division
3080	That no lele lege-man that to him longed, Sholde lie by no ladies, ne by no lele maidens, Ne by no burgess wife, better ne worse	limb; loss
	Ne no bernes misbid that to the burch longed.	harm what
	When the king Arthur had lely conquered	
3085	And the castel covered of the kith rich, All the cruel and keen, by craftes of armes, Capitains and constables, knew him for lord. He devised and delt to diverse lordes	acknowledged
	A dower for the duchess and her dere childer;	divided
3090	Wrought wardenes by wit to weld all the landes That he had wonnes of war through his wise knyghtes. Thus in Lorraine he lenger as lord in his own, Settes lawes in the land as him self thought,	widow's estate
	And on Lammas day to Lucerne he wendes,	rule
3095	Lenger there at leisere with likyngh ynow. There his galloys were graithed, a full grete number, All glitterand as glass, under green hilles, With cabanes covered for kings anointed	August 1
	With clothes of clere gold for knyghtes and other;	leisure; pleasure
3100	Soone stowed their stuff and stabled their horses, Strekkes streke over the stremme into the strait landes.	prepared
		cabin
	Now he moves his might with mirthe of heric Over mountes so high, those marvelous wayes,	Strake straight; narrow
	Gos in by Goddard, the garret he wisnes,	Mt. Goddard; watch tower
3105	Graithes the garnison grisly wounded!	Draught; garrison

#### Alternative Morse Anthems

When he was passed the height, then the king hoves  
With his hole battail beholdand about,  
Lookand on Lumbardy and on loud meles:  
"In yon likand land lord be I think!"<sup>1</sup>

- |      |  |   |
|------|--|---|
| 3110 | Then they kaire to Combe with kinges annointed,<br>That was kidd of the coste, key of all other.<br>Sir Floreat and Sir Floridas then foundes before<br>With freke men of Fraunce well a five hundred;   | Como<br><i>i.e., of Lake Como</i>                             |
| 3115 | To the citee unseen they sought at the gainest,<br>And set an embushment, als themselve likes,<br>Then ishewes out of that citee, full soon by the morn;<br>Sleyly discoverers skiftes their horses;   | quicker way<br>ambush<br>issue                                |
|      | Then skiftes these scowerers and skipes on hilles,<br>Discoverers for skulkers that they no scathe limpes. <sup>1</sup>  | Slyly scouts manage<br>shift; searchers                       |
| 3120 | Poverall and pastorells passed on after<br>With porkes to pasture at the pris ganes;<br>Boyes in the suburbes bounden full high<br>At a bore singlere that to the beaste runnes.   | Poor people; shepherds<br>hogs<br>Servants; jest<br>wild boar |
| 3125 | Then brekes our bushment and the bridge winnes,<br>Braides into the burgh with banners displayed,<br>Stokes and stabbes through that them again-standes;<br>Four streeches, ere they stiat, they stroyd forever!   | breaks out; ambush<br>Rush<br>Stick; withdraw                 |
| 3130 | Now is the conquerour in Combe and his court holdes<br>Within the kidd castel with kinges annointed,<br>Recounseles the commons that to the kith longes,<br>Comfortes the care-full with knighthly wordes,<br>Made a capitais kees a knight of his owen;<br>But all the countrie and he full soon were accoeded. | Como<br>Advises   |
| 3135 | The Sire of Milan herde say the citee was woonnes,<br>And send to Arthur certain lordes,<br>Grene summes of gold, sixty horses charged,  | faid  |

<sup>1</sup> *I intend to be lord of that pleasing land.*

<sup>1</sup> Scan for those riding so that no horse may refuse them.

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- Besought him as sovereign to succour the people,  
And said he wold soothly be subject forever,  
And make him service and saute for his sere landes;  
3140 For Plesasnoe, for Pawnoe, and for Powte Tremble,  
For Pise and for Pavie he proffers full large  
Both purpure and pail and precious stones,  
Palfreeyes for any prynce and peoved steedes  
And ilk a yere for Milan a million of gold,  
3145 Meekly at Martinmas to monske with his bordes,<sup>1</sup>  
And ever, withouten asking, he and his cleris  
Be hommagers to Arthur whiles his life lastes.  
The king by his counsel a condeth him sendes,  
And he is comes to Combe and knew him as lord.
- 3150 Into Tuskane he turns when thus wel timed,  
Takes townes fall tite with towres full high;  
Walles he welt down, wounades knyghtes,  
Towres he turns, and tourmentes the people,  
Wrought widowes full wroak wrotherayle singen,  
3155 Oft werye and weep and wringon their handes;  
And all he wastes with war there he away rides;  
Their welthes and their wooninges wandreth he wrought!
- Thus they springes and spred and spares but little,  
Spoiles dispitously and spilles their vines,  
3160 Spendes unsparingly that spared was long.  
Spedes them to Spoleto with spercs ynow!  
Fro Spain into Spruyntland the word of him springes  
And spekings of his spenses despite is full huge.  
Toward Viterbo this valiant aveeres the reines;
- 3165 Avisely in that vale he vitailles his bernes,  
With Vernage and other wine and venison bakyn  
And on the Viscounte landes he vyses to lense.  
Vertely the avaentward voides their hoeses  
In the Veresonne vale the vises i-monges;
- 3170 There sujournes this sovereign with solace in herte,
- subject  
*fusdal homage*  
(see note)  
*Pisa; Pavia*  
*purple dye; silk*  
*million*  
*safe conduct*  
*Come; acknowledged*
- knocked  
overturn  
*fair misery to sing*  
*curse*  
*dwellings; sadness*
- spread  
*Plunder pitiously; destroy*  
*without stinging; saved*  
*Spoleto*  
*Prussia*  
*berne*  
*Showdily; richaulx*  
*white wine; baked*  
*Viscount's; determines*  
*Quickly*  
*among*

<sup>1</sup> Meekly on St. Martin's Day (November 11) to pay homage with his treasures

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- To see when the Senatoars sent any wordes,  
Revel with rich wine, riotes himselfen,  
This roay with his real mea. of the Round Table,  
With mirthes and melody and manykin games;  
3175 Was never merrier men made on this erthe!

carouse

king

many sorts of pleasures

- Bat on a Saterday at noons, a seven-night there-after.  
The cunningest Cardinal that to the court longed  
Kneels to the conquerour and carpes these wordes,  
Prayes him for the pees and proffers full large  
3180 To have pitee of the Pope, that put was at-under  
Besought him of vassance for sake of the Lord  
Bat a seven-night day to they were all semblid  
And they sholde sekerly him see the Sononday there-after  
3185 Is the citee of Rome, as sovereign and lord,  
And crown him kindly with crimed handes  
With his sceptre and swerde, as sovereign and lord.  
Of this undertaking hostage are comes,  
Of eiors full avenant, eight score children,  
In togges of tars full richly attired,  
3190 And besoek them the king and his clere knigtes.

or a disadvantage

a truce

a week from today; until

Sunday

anointed

agreement

pleasant

Chinese silk

gave them to

- When they had trewd their trewe, with trumping thereafter discussed; truce  
They triue unto a tent where tables were raised; go  
The king himselfen is set and certain lordes  
Under a sybre of silk, saught at the bordes,  
3195 All the senatoars are set sere by them one,  
Served solemnly with selcothe metes.  
The king, mighty of mirth, with his mild wordes,  
Rehetes the Romanes at his rich table,  
Comfortes the Cardinal, so knighthly himselfen,  
3200 And this roay real, as romassance us telles,  
Reverences the Romans in his rich table.  
The taught men and the cunning, when them time thought,  
Tas their leve at the king and turned again;  
To the citee that night they sought at the gainest,  
3205 And thus the hostage of Rome with Arthur is leved.

canopy; reconciled

each by himself

Cheers

Take

Then this roay real reherses these wordes: rehearser (self)

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- "Now we may revel and rest, for Rome is our own!  
Make our hostage at ese, these aveniant children,  
And look ye honden them all that in mine host lenger,  
3210 The Emperour of Almaine and all these este marches;  
We shall be overling of all that on erthe lenger!  
We will by the Cross-days encroch these landes  
And at the Crisemas day be crowned there-after.  
Regne in my realtees and hold my Round Table,  
3215 With the rentes of Rome, as me best likes;  
Senn graithe over the grete se with good men of armes  
To revenge the Rensk that on the Rood died!"
- case; pirates  
guard
- Sept. 13-14; invade
- Cross
- Then this comlich king as cronicles telles,  
Bounes brothly to bed with a blithe here;  
Off he slinges with sleight and stakes his girdle,<sup>1</sup>  
3220 And for slenth of slomour on a sleep falles.  
But by one after midnight all his mood changed.  
He mette in the morn-while full marvelous dremes;  
He mette in the morn-while full marvelous dremes;  
And when his dredful deeme was driven to the eade,  
3225 The king dares for doute die as he sholde,  
Sendes after philosophers, and his affray telles:  
"Senn I was formed, in faith, so feud was I never!  
For thy ransackes redily and rede me my sweneas,  
And I shall redily and right reberzen the sooth.
- slouch; chamber  
1:00 a.m.  
dreamed; morning; dreams  
coward in fear  
terror
- search; interpret; dreams  
rehearse (roll)
- 3230 "Me thought I was in a wood, willed mine one  
That I ne wiste no way whider that I sholde,  
For wolves and wild swine and wicked bestes  
Walked in that western wathes to seek,  
There lions full lothly licked their taskes  
3235 All for lapping of blood of my lele knyghtes!  
Through that forest I fled there flowres were high,  
For to fele me for ferre of tho foul things,  
Merched to a medow with mountaines enclosed  
The merriest of middle-erthe that men might behold.  
3240 The close was in compass casten all about
- wandered by myself  
knew; whether; should go  
mase place prey  
loathly
- hide; fear  
meadow
- enclosed place; extent covered

<sup>1</sup> He throws himself quickly on the bed and loosens his belt

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- With clover and clerewort clodde even over;  
The vale was enverround with vines of silver,  
All with grapes of gold, greter were never,  
Enhortid with arbory and alkyn trees,  
3245 Erberes full honest, and herdes there-under;  
All frutes foddemed was that flourished in erthe,  
Fair frithed in frasenk upon the free bowes;<sup>1</sup>  
Was there no danking of dew that ought dere sholde;  
With the drought of the day all dry were the flowres.
- 3250 "Then descendet in the dale, down fro the cloudes,  
A duchess dereworthily digt in diaperred weedes,  
In a surcote of silk full selcouthly hewod,  
All with loyotoar overlaid low to the hemmes  
3255 And with ladily lappes the leanghe of a yard,  
And all redily reversed with rebanes of gold,  
With broches and besauates and other bright stones;  
Her back and her heeste was broched all over,  
With kell and with coronal clenlich arrayed,  
And that so comly of colour one knownen was never.
- 3260 "About sho whirled a wheel with her white handes,  
Overwhelm all quaintly the wheel, as sho sholde;  
The rowell was red gold with real stones,  
Railed with riches and rubies ynow,  
The spekes was splentid all with spchtes of silver,  
3265 The space of a spear-lenghe springand fall fair;  
There-on was a chair of chalk-white silver  
And checkered with carbuncle changing of hewes  
Upon the compass there cleved kinges on row,  
With crowns of clere gold that cracked in sonder;  
3270 Six was of that settle full sodestich fallen,  
Ik a segge by himself and said these wordes:  
"That ever I regned on this roo me newes it ever!  
Was never roy so rich that regned in erthe!
- small grass clad  
encircled  
*Surrounded; groves; all kinds of*  
*Gardens produced*
- expensively; patterned  
surcote; rarely  
otter fur  
ladylike lappes  
trimmed; ribbons  
brooches; medallions  
adorned  
helmet; diadem  
complexion
- Turned skilfully  
wheel  
Adorned  
spokes; plated; bars  
spear length
- carbuncle  
outer edge; chang
- seat  
warrior  
wheel  
king

<sup>1</sup> *Beautifully enclosed upon the nobir boughs; / There was no moister that could harm anything*

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- When I rode in my rost: sought I nouȝt elles  
 But rivaye and revel and raunson the popic!  
 And thus I drive forth my dayes whiles I drie might,  
 And therefore derlich I am damned for ever!
- "The last was a little man that laid was benefit;  
 His leskes lay all lese and lothlich to shew,  
 His lockes liard and long the lenghe of a yard,  
 His lire and his ligham lamed full sore.  
 The tene eye of the berne was brighter than silver  
 The other was yellower than the yolk of a nay.
- "I was lord," quod the lede, "landes ynow,  
 And all ledes me louted that lenged in erthe.  
 And now is left me no lap my ligham to hele  
 But lightly now am I lost, leve eche man the sooth."
- "The second sir, forsooth, that sewed them after  
 Was sekerer to my sight and sadder in armes;  
 Oft he sighed unsound and said these wordes:  
 'On you see have I sitten als sovereign and lord,  
 And ladies me loved to lap in their armes,  
 And now my lordshippes are lost and laid for ever!'
- "The third thoroughly was thro and thick in the shoulder,  
 A thro man to thret of there thirty were gadered;  
 His diadem was dropped down, dubbed with stones,  
 Endented all with diamandes and dight for the noscs;  
 'I was dredded in my dayes,' he said, 'in diverse newmes,  
 And now damned to the dede, and dole is the moe!'
- "The fourt was a fair man and forcey in armes,  
 The fairest of figure that formed was ever.  
 'I was frek in my faith,' he said, 'whiles I on folde regned,  
 Famous in fer landes and flower of all kinges;  
 Now is my face defaded and foul is me happened,  
 For I am fallen fro fer and frendles believed.'
- "The fift was a fairer man than alle of these other,

*I thought of  
to have  
endure  
direly*

*beneath  
joins; join  
gray  
face; body crippled  
The one  
an egg*

*bowed to me  
rag; body to cover  
quickly; believe*

*followed  
stronger; more determined  
throne  
fold*

*stone  
threaten  
adorned  
Adorned; diamonds  
dreaded*

*fourth; forceful  
bold; earth  
withered*

*fifth*

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- A forcey man and a fers, with foemand lippes;  
He fanged fast on the felcighes and folded his armes  
But yet he failed and fell a fifty foot large;
- 3310 But yet he sprang and sprent and spradden his armes.  
And on the spreng-lenghe spekes he spekes these wordes:  
'I was in Sarry a Sire and set by mine one  
As soveraigne and seignour of sere kinges landes;  
Now of my solace I am full sodenly fallen  
3315 And for sake of my sin yon seire is me rewed.'
- "The sirf had a sawter seemlich bounden  
With a surpel of silk sewed full fair,  
A harp and a hand-sling with hard flint-stones;  
What harnes he has heft he hallowes full soon:  
3320 'I was deemed in my dayes,' he said, 'of deedes of armes  
One of the doughtiest that dwelled in erthe;  
But I was marred on moide in my most strengthes  
With this maiden so mild that moves us all.'
- "Two kinges were clibband and claverand on high,  
3325 The crest of the compass they covet full yerne.  
'This chair of carbuncle,' they said, 'we challenge hereafter,  
As two of the cheflest chosen in erthe.'
- "The chilfer were chalk-white, cheekes and other.  
But the chair aboven cheved they never.
- 3330 The furthermost was freely with a front large  
The fairest of flesomy that formed was ever,  
And he was busked in a blee of a blew noble  
With flourdelys of gold flourished all over;  
The nother wan cladde in a cose all of cleane silver,  
3335 With a comlich cross corven of gold;  
Four crosseletnes crafty by the cross restes  
And thereby knew I the king, that christened him seemed.
- "Then I went to that wloek and wily her greenes,  
And she said: 'Welcomme, iwis, well art thou founded;  
3340 Thou ought to worship my will, and thou well coathe,  
Of all the valiant men that ever was in erthe,
- forceful; foaming  
gripped; rim  
leaped; spread  
spokes  
lord  
yon seire is denied me  
sirf; paular; bound  
surpel (cover); new  
suffered; amusses  
injured  
clambering  
top; wheel; eagerly  
carbuncle  
achieved  
noble; forehead  
physiognomy  
dressed; color; blue  
fleur-de-lis (lily)  
The other; clad  
carved  
little crosses  
bright (one); graciously  
come  
knew how

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- For all thy worship is war: by me has thou wonnen;  
I have been frendly, freke, and frenmed til other,      strange (hostile) to others  
That thou has foonden, in faith, and fele of thy bernes,  
3345 For I felled down Sir Frolic with foward knighthes;      defrauded; hostile  
For-thy the fruits of Fraunce are freely thine own.  
Thou shall the chair escheve, I chese thee myselfen,  
Before all the cheftaines choses in this erthe."
- "Sho lift me up lightly with her lone handes      iron  
3350 And set me softly in the see, the seoper me reched;      throne; sceptre; gave  
Craftily with a comb sho kembed mine heved,  
That the crispand krok to my crown raught;  
Dressed on me a diadem that dight was full fair,  
And sean proffers me a pome pight full of fair stones,  
3355 Esameld with aseare, the erthe there-on depainted,  
Circled with the salt sc upon sere halves,  
In sign that I soothly was soveraigne in erthe.
- "Then brought sho me a brand with full bright hiltes      sword  
And bade me braundish the blade: 'The brand is mine own;  
3360 Many swain with the swing has the swet leved,  
For whiles thou swank with the sword it swiked thee never.'      lifeblood left  
laborred; failed
- "Then rakes sho with roo and rest when her liked,  
To the rindes of the wood, richer was never;  
Was no pomere so pight of princes in erthe,  
3365 Ne none apparel so proud but paradise one.  
Sho bade the bowes sholde bow down and bring to my handes      bows  
Of the best that they bore on braunches so high;  
Then they helded to her best, all holly at ones,  
The highest of ech a hirst, I bete you forsooth.  
3370 Sho bade me frith not the fruit, but forde whiles me liked:  
'Fonde of the finest, thou frelich berne,  
And reche to the ripest and riot thyselfen.  
Rest, thou seal roy, for Rome is thine own,  
And I shall sedily roll the roo at the gainest      wheel  
3375 And reche thee the rich wise in rinsed cuppes."
- "Then sho went to the well by the wood eves,

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- That all welled of winc and wonderlich rusnes,  
Caught up a cup-full and covered it fair;  
She bade me derelich draw and drink to herselven;  
3380 And thus she led me about the lengthe of an hour,  
With all liking and love that any lode sholde. *dearly take a draught*  
*should ware*
- "But at the mid-day full even all her mood changed.  
And made much menace with marvelous wonderes.  
When I cried upon her, she cast down her brows:  
3385 'King, thou carpes for sought, by Crist that me made!  
For thou shall lose this laik and thy life after;  
Thou has lived in delit and lordshippes ynow!'" *pleasure*  
*delight*
- "About she whirles the wheel and whirles me under,  
Til all my quarters that while were quasht all to peces, *time; crushed*  
3390 And with that chair my chin was chopped in sonder;  
And I have shivered for chele senn me this chaunce happened. *chill*  
Thus wakened I, iwis, all wery foyrmed, *wearied from dreaming*  
And now wot thou my wo, worde as thee likes." *speak*
- "Froke," says the philosopher, "thy fortune is passed,  
3395 For thou shall find her thy fo, fraist when thee likes! *Bold warrior*  
Thou art at the highest, I hate thee forsooth; *promise*  
Challenge now when thou will, thou cheves no more!  
Thou has shed much blood and shalkes destroyed. *men*
- 3400 Sakeles, in surquidrie, in sere kinges landes; *Innocent; pride*  
Shrive thee of thy shame and shape for thine end. *Confess; prepare*  
Thou has a shewing, Sir King, take keep yif thee like,  
For thou shall fersly fall within five winters.  
Found abbeys in Fraunce, the fraites are thine own.  
3405 For Frolic and for Feraust and for thir fers knighthes  
That thou freamedly in Fraunce has fey believed.<sup>1</sup> *revelation*  
Take keep yet of other kinges, and cast in thine herte,  
That were conquerours kidd and crowned in erthe. *consider*
- "The eldest was Alexander that all the world loued, *bowed to*

<sup>1</sup> Whom you unkindly (as a stranger) left dead in France.

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- |   |  |                                      |
|---|--|--------------------------------------|
| 3410  | The tother Ector of Troy, the chevalrous gome;   | other                                |
|   | The third Julius Cesar, that giassnt was holden,<br>In eche journee gentle, adjudged with lordes.  |                                      |
|   | The fourth was Sir Judas, a jouster full noble,<br>The masterful Macabee, the mightiest of strenghes;  |                                      |
|   | The fift was Josue, that jolly man of armes,   | fifth                                |
| 3415  | That in Jerusalem host fell much joy limped;   | befrif                               |
|   | The sixt was David the dore, deemed with kinges<br>One of the doughtiest that dabbed was ever,<br>For he slew with a sling by sleight of his handes  | sixth                                |
|   | Goliath the grete gome, grimnest in erthe;   | Goliath                              |
| 3420  | Sean endited in his dayes all the dore psalmes<br>That in the sawter are set with selcouthe wordes,  | composed<br>psalmer                  |
|   |  |                                      |
| "The tote climated king, I know it foisooth,<br>Shall Karolus be called, the kinge son of Praunce;<br>He shall be cruel and keen and conquerour holden, |  | The one<br>Charlemagne; king's       |
| 3425  | Cover by conquest contrees ynow,<br>He shall encroch the crown that Cristi bore himselfen,<br>And that lifelich launce that lepe to His berte<br>When He was crucified on cross, and all the keen nailes   | Obtain<br>capture<br>strong          |
|   | Knightly he shall conquer to Cristes men handes.   | i.e., for                            |
|   |  |                                      |
| 3430  | "The tother shall be Godfray, that God shall revenge<br>On the Good Friday with galiard knyghtes;<br>He shall of Lorraine be lord by leve of his fader<br>And sean in Jerusalem much joy happen,   | The other<br>jolly                   |
|   | For he shall cover the cross by craftes of armes   | recover                              |
| 3435  | And sean be crowned king with crismoun anointed.<br>Shall no dakes in his day such destainy happen,<br>Ne such mischief drie when trewth shall be tried.   | holy oil<br>destiny<br>uffer; proved |
|   |  |                                      |
| "For thy Fortune thee fetches to fulfill the number,<br>Als xinde of the noblest named in erthe;  |  | sixth of the Worthies                |
| 3440  | This shall in romauce be redde with real knyghtes,<br>Reckoned and renoumed with riotous kinges,<br>And deemed on Doomesday for deedes of armes,<br>For the doughtiest that ever was dweland in erthe;<br>So many clerkes and kinges shall carp of your deedes |                                      |

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

3445 And keep your conquestes in cronicle for ever.

"But the wolves in the wood and the wild bestes  
Are some wicked men that werray thy newmes,  
Is entered in thine absence to werray thy popic,  
And alienes and hostis of uncouth landes.

attack

3450 Thou gettes tidandes, I trow, within ten dayes,  
That some torfer is tide seen thou fro home turned.  
I rede thou reckon and rehersse unresonable doodes  
Ere thee repentes full rathe all thy newth workes.  
Man, amend thy mood, ere thou mishappen,  
3455 And meekly ask mercy for meed of thy soul."

foreign

i.e., will get

trouble has happened

self (i.e., confus)

quickly; sud

have misfortune

reward

Then rises the rich king and ragt on his weedes,  
A red acton of rose, the richest of flowres,  
A pesan and a paunson and a pris girdle;<sup>1</sup>  
And on he hennes a hood of scarlet fell rich.  
3460 A pavis pillion-hat that pight was fell fair  
With peery of the Orient and precious stones;  
His gloves gaylich gilt and graven by the hemmes  
With graines of rubies full gracious to shew.  
His bede greyhound and his brond and no berne else  
3465 And bounes over a brode mede with brethe at his berne.  
Forth he stalkes a sty by tho still eves,  
Stotays at a high street, studyand him one.<sup>2</sup>

quilted jacket

dress

large cloth hat

pearls

decorated

small stones

(He takes) his hunting

meadow; anger

path

At the soors of the sun he sees there comand,  
Raikand to Rose-ward the rediest wayes,  
3470 A renk in a round clok with right rowme clothes.<sup>3</sup>  
With hat and with high shoon homely and round;  
With flat farthinges the freke was flourished all over  
Many shreddes and shragges at his skirtes hanges

rising

Going; quicker

shoes; comfortable

coins; adorned

scalloped edges

<sup>1</sup> An armor neckpiece, a stomach guard, and an excellent belt

<sup>2</sup> Pauses at a main road, thinking by himself

<sup>3</sup> A man in a full-cut cloak and very roomy clothes

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- With scrip and with slawis<sup>1</sup> and scallopes ynow<sup>1</sup>  
 3475 Both pike and palm, als pilgrim him sholde;  
 The gome graithly him grette and bade good morwen;  
 The king, lordly himself, of langage of Rome,  
 Of Latin corrupted all, felte lovely him menes:  
 "Wheder willes thou, wye, walkand thine one?  
 3480 Whiles this world is o war, a warthe I it hold;  
 Here is an easys with host, under yon vines;  
 And they see thee, forsooth, sorrow thee betides;  
 But if thou have condeth of the king selven,  
 Knaives will kill thee and keep at thos haves,  
 3485 And if thos hold the high way, they bera thee also,  
 But if thou hastly have help of his hende knyghtes."
- Then carpes Sir Craddok to the king selver:  
 "I shall forgive him my dede, so me God help,  
 Any gone under God that on this ground walkes!  
 3490 Let the keesest come that to the king longes,  
 I shall encounter him as knight, so Crist have my soal!  
 For thou may not reche me ne arrest thyselfen,  
 Though thou be richly arrayed in full rich weedes;  
 I will not wondre for no war to wend where me likes.  
 3495 No for no wye of this world that wrought is on erthe!  
 But I will pass in pilgrimage this pas to Rome  
 To purchase me pardon of the Pope selver,  
 And of the paines of Purgatory be pleasurly assollied;  
 Then shall I seek sekerly my soveraign lord,  
 3500 Sir Arthur of England, that avevaunt berne!  
 For he is in this empire, as bathel men me tellis,  
 Hostayand in this Orient with awful knyghtes."
- "Pro whethen come thou, koen man," quod the king then,  
 "That knowes King Arthur and his knyghtes also?  
 3505 Was thou ever in his coart whiles he in kith leaged?  
 Thou carpes so kindly it confortes mine herse!"

<sup>1</sup> With wallet and with pilgrim's manlit and many scallop shells; / Both staff and palm branch,  
 as if he were a pilgrim

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

'Well wile has thou went and wisely thou seekes,  
For thou art Breton berne, as by thy brode speche.'

nobly  
British; plain

3510 "Me ought to know the king: he is my kide lord,  
And I called in his court a knight of his chamber;  
Sir Craddok was I called in his court rich,  
Keeper of Caerlion, under the king solven;  
Now I am chased out of kith, with care at my herfe,  
And that castel is caught with uncoathie ledes."

captured; foreign men

3515 Then the comlich king caught him in arms,  
Cast off his kettle-hat and kissed him full soon,  
Said: "Welcome, Sir Craddok, so Crist mot me help!  
Dere cosin of kind, thou coldes mine herfe!  
How fares it in Britain with all my bold bernes?  
3520 Are they brittened or breist or brought out of life?  
Ken thou me kindly what case is befallen;  
I keep no credens to crave; I know thee for trew."<sup>1</sup>

blood relative  
burned  
Tell

3525 "Sir, thy warden is wicked and wild of his deeds,  
For he wandreth has wrought senn thou away passed.  
He has castels encroched and crownd themselves,  
Caught in all the remes of the Round Table;  
He devised the reme and deit as him likes;  
Divided of the Denmarkes dukes and erles,  
Dabbed of the Danes; i.e.,  
Discovered them sonderwise, and citices destroyed;  
3530 Of Sarazenes and Sessones upon sore halves  
He has sembled a sorte of scicorathe bernes,  
Soveraignes of Sargenale and soudeours many  
Of Pegnes and paynims and proved knighthes  
Of Ireland and Argyle, outlawed bernes;  
3535 All tho laddes are knighthes that long to the mountes,  
And loding and lordship has all, als themselfe likes;  
And there is Sir Childek a cheftain holden,  
That ilke chevalrous man, he charges thy pople;  
They rob thy religious and ravish thy nuns;

i.e., Mordred  
misery; since  
captured  
divided  
i.e., Danes  
Scattered; everywhere  
Saxons; both sides  
foreign  
South Wales; mercenaries  
Picts; pagans

command  
burdens  
monks

<sup>1</sup> I need ask for no credentials; I know you are true

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- 3540 And rody rides with his rost to ransom the poor,  
Fro Humber to Hawyk he holdes his own,  
And all the countree of Kent by covenant entalled,  
The comlich castles that to the crown longed,  
The holtes and the hore wood and the hard bankes,  
All that Hengest and Hors held in their time;  
At Southampton on the se is seven score shippes,  
Fraught full of fers folk, out of fer landes,  
For to fight with thy frap when thou them assailes.  
But yet a word, witterly, thou wot not the wost!  
3550 He has wedded Waynor and her his wife holdes,  
And wonnes in the wild boundes of the west marches,  
And has wrought her with child, as witness telles!  
Of all the wyes of this world, wo mot him worthie,  
Als warden unworthy women to yeme!  
3555 Thus has Sir Mordred marred us all!  
For-thy I marked over these mountes to mene thee the sooth."

rob

(see note)

in his possession

hoar (gray)

held

Filled

company

certainly

dwell

were; were to be

preserve

injured

came; tell

- Then the burlich king, for brethe at his herte  
And for this booteless bale all his blee changed;  
"By the Rood," says the roy, "I shall it revenge!"  
3560 Him shall repeat full rathe all his rewth workes!"  
All weepand for wo he went to his tentes;  
Unwinkly this wise king he wakenes his bernes,  
Cleped in a clarious kinges and other,  
Calles them to counsel and of this case telles:  
3565 "I am with tresoun betrayed, for all my trew deedes!  
And all my travail is tint, me tides no better!  
Him shall torfer betide this tresoun has wrought,  
And I may traistely him take, as I am trew lord!  
This is Mordred, the man that I most traisted,  
3570 Has my castels encroched and crownd himselfen  
With rentes and riches of the Round Table;  
He made all his retinues of renayed wretchedes,  
And devised my sevn to diverse lordes,  
To soudours and Sarazens out of see landes!  
3575 He has wedded Waynor and her to wife holdes,  
And a child is y-shaped, the chausse is no better!  
They have scimbled on the se seven score shippes,

without remedy; color

quickly; calamitous

Unhappily

Called with a trumpet

labor; destroyed

treason; i.e., who this

can surely

renegade

divided

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

	Full of ferrom folk to fight with mine one!	foreign
	For-thy to Britain the Brode buske us behooves, <sup>1</sup>	
3580	For to britten the bese that has this bale raised.	bale; grief
	There shall no freke men fare but all on fresh horses	
	That are frausted in fight and flowe of my knighthes.	
	Sir Howell and Sir Hardolf here shall believe	
	To be lordes of the ledes that here to me longes;	
3585	Lookes into Lombardy that there no lede change, <sup>2</sup>	
	And tenderly to Tuskane take tent als I bid;	attention
	Receive the restes of Rome when they are reckoned;	
	Take sesin the same day that last was assigned,	
	Or elles all the hostage withouten the walles	possession
3590	Be hanged high upon height all holly at ones."	

	Now bouses the bold king with his best knighthes,	
	Gars trome and trasse and trines forth after, <sup>3</sup>	
	Turnes through Tuskane, taries but little;	
	Lights not in Lombardy but when the light failed;	
3595	Merkes over the mountaines fall marvelous wayes,	Marches
	Ayers through Almaine even at the gainest	
	Ferkes even into Flandres with his fers knighthes.	Normans; Flanders
	Within fifteen dayes his fleet is assembled,	
	And then he shope him to ship and shoues no lenger,	<i>prepared himself; delays</i>
3600	Sheeres with a sharp wind over the shire waters;	Cut; translucent
	By the roche with ropes he rides on anker.	rocks; anchor
	There the false men fleted and on flood leaged,	floated
	With chef chaines of charre chocked togodens. <sup>4</sup>	
	Charged even chock-full of chevalous knighthes,	
3605	And in the hinter on height, helmes and crestes;	rear
	Hatches with bethen men heled were there-under,	
	Proudlich pourrayed with paisted clothes,	painted; on
	Ech a pece by pece prikked til other,	newed
	Dubbed with dagwainnes dobbled they seem;	Adorned; heavy cloth

<sup>1</sup> Therefore to Great Britaine it behooves us to have

<sup>2</sup> See that in Lombardy no man change his allegiance

<sup>3</sup> Sends forth troops and baggage and goes forth thereafter

<sup>4</sup> Linked together with great wagon chains

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

3610	And thus the derf Denmarkes had dight all their shippes, That no dint of no dart dere them sholdie.	Danes horn	
Then the roy and the renkes of the Round Table All realy in red arrayes his shippes; That day ducheries he delt and dubbed knighthes,			
3615	Dresses dromondes and dralles and drawen up stones; The top-castels he studded with toiles, as him liked; Bendes bowes of vise beothly there-after;	galley; barges alleges crossbow; fiercely	
	Toloures tently tackle they righten, Brasen hedes fell brode basted on floses,	Haulers carefully Bronze; missiles	
3620	Graithes for garnisons, gones arrayes, Grim godes of steel, givis of iron;	garrison goods; fenses	
	Stighnes sterres on sterren with stiff men of armes;	Supplies; stern (ship)	
	Many lovelich launce upon loft standes,	lee (sea side of ship)	
	Ledes on lebord, ledes and other,	reef barrier	
3625	Fight pavis on port, painted sheldes. <sup>1</sup> On hinder bardace on height helmed knightes.	maneuver; shooting	
	Thus they shiften for shottes on those shire strandes,	garment	
	like shalk in his shroud, full sheen were their weedes.		
The bold king is in a barge and about rowes, 3630 All bare-hevede for besy with beveren lockes, <sup>2</sup> And a berne with his brand and an heim beten,			
	Menged with a mauntele of mailles of silver,	adorned (beaten)	
	Compaist with a coronal and covered full rich;	Adorned; little mantle	
3635	Kaires to ech a cogge to comfort his knightes;	Encircled; diadem; decorated	
	To Clegis and Cleremond he cries on land:	Travel; ship	
	"O Gawain! O Galyran! These good mess bodies!"		
	To Lot and to Lionel full lovely he meles,		
	And to Sir Launcelot de Lake lordlich weedes:		
	"Let us cover the kith, the coste is our own,	reclaim	
3640	And gar them brothelich blenk, all yon blood-houndes!	make; violently blanch	
	Britten them withis bord; and briu them there-after!	aboard; burn	
	Hew down hertily yon hethen tikes!	dogs	

<sup>1</sup> Arranged wooden shields on the left (port), painted shield

<sup>2</sup> All bareheaded because of business, with beaver-colored locks

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

They are barlates half, I bete you mine hand!<sup>1</sup>

	Then he coveres his cogge and catches on anker,	returns to; ship; anchor
3645	Caught his comlich helm with the clere mailles;	
	Buskes banners on brode, betea of gales,	Raises; adorned with red
	With crowns of clere gold clenlich arrayed;	
	But there was chosen in the chef a chalk-white maiden, <sup>2</sup>	
	And a child in her arm that Chef is of heven;	
3650	Withouten changing in chace these were the chef armes	noble
	Of Arthur the avenaunt, whiles he in erthe leaged.	worthy
	Then the mariners meles and masters of shippes;	get to work
	Merrily ich a mate menes till other;	sack; speaks
	Of their termes they talk, how they were tidd, <sup>3</sup>	
3655	Towes trussel on trete, trassen up sailes,	Drag handles on tressels
	Bete bonnetes on beode, betried hatches;	Set small nail; hammered
	Braundisht beown steel, bragged in trumpes;	blew in trumpets
	Standes stiff on the stamin, steerres on after,	stalwartly on the prow
	Streken over the steme, there striving beginnes.	Strike
3660	Fro the waggand wind out of the west rises,	When; swaying
	Brothly besomes with birr in bernes sailes,	Suddenly sweeps; force
	Wether bringes on bord burlich cogges, <sup>4</sup>	
	Whiles the bilge and the beme bristes in sonder;	
	So stoutly the fore-siers on the stam hitcs	arm; prow
3665	That stockes of the ster-borde strikes in pece!	planks; starboard side
	By thea cogge upon cogge, crayers and other,	ship; small ships
	Castes crepers on-cross, als to the craft longes;	grappling hooks across
	Then was hed-ropes hewen, that held up the mastes;	
	There was comek full keen and cracking of shippes!	
3670	Grete cogges of kemp crashes in sonder!	strike
	Many cabane cleved, cables destroyed,	war
	Knightes and keen men killed the bernes!	cabin

<sup>1</sup> They are on the rascal's side, I swear by my hand

<sup>2</sup> But there was placed in the chef (upper third of shield) a chalk-white maiden

<sup>3</sup> They talk in their jargon about what has happened

<sup>4</sup> Weather (wind) brings stowr ship against planks (of other ships), / So that the bilge and the beam burst apart

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- Kidd castels were corves, with all their keen wopen,  
Castels full comlich that coloured were fair!  
Up tis edgeling they ochen there-after;  
With the swing of the sword sways the mastes,  
Over-falles in the first frekes and other;  
Many freke in the fore-ship sry is believed!  
Then brothly they beker with bastous tackle;  
Brushes boldly on borde breseyd knighthes.<sup>1</sup>  
Out of boates on borde, was busked with stones,  
Betwown of the best, bristles the hatches;  
Some gomes through-gird with godes of iron,  
Gomes gaylich cledde englaines wopenes;  
Archers of England fall egerly shoothes,  
Hittes through the hard steel full hertly distes!  
Soon ochen in holly the hethen knighthes,  
Hart through the hard steel, hele they never!  
Then they fall to the fight, foynes with speres,  
All the frekkest on front that to the fight longes,  
And ilkos freshly fraistes their strenghes,  
War to fight in the fleet with their fell wopenes.  
Thus they delt that day, thir dubbed knighthes,  
Til all the Danes were dede and in the deep thrown!  
Then Bretons brothly with brandes they hewen;  
Lepes in upos loft leedlich bernes;  
When lordes of out-landes lepen in waters,  
All our lordes on land laughen at ones!
- By then speres were sprongen, spalid shippes,  
Spaniolas speedily sprated over-bordes;  
All the keen men of kemp, knighthes and other,  
Killed are cold-dede and casten over-bedes;  
Their swyers swiftly has the swet leved;  
Hethen hevand on hatch in thir hawe rises,  
Sinkand in the salt se seven handreth at ones!  
Then Sir Gawain the good, he has the gree wonnen.
- phones; curved  
mast-stays; edgewise; hawc  
i.e., few blow  
fight; powerful equipment  
pierced; gods  
Men; clad make slimy  
Strike; mortal  
completely cut down  
heat  
duel  
front rank  
each one  
to fight the battle  
through the air  
broken; split  
Spaniards; leaped overboard  
battle  
young men; lifeblood  
heaving; these gray waves  
prize

<sup>1</sup> Armored knights rush boldly on board, / (Coming) out of small boats on board, (and) were pelted with stones

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- And all the cogges gret he gave to his knyghtes.  
Sir Garin, Sir Griswold, and other gret lordes;  
Gart Galath, a good gone, gred off their bedes!
- 3710 Thus of the false fleet upon the flood happened,  
And thus these ferin folk fey are believed!
- Yet is the traitour on land with tried knyghtes,  
And all trumped they trip on trapped steedes  
Shewes them under sheld on the shire bankes;
- 3715 He ne shannes for no shame but shewes full high!  
Sir Arthur and Gawain avyed them bothen  
To sixty thousand of men that is their sight hoved.  
By this the folk was felled, then was the flood passed;<sup>1</sup>  
Then was it silke a slowde in slackes full huge
- 3720 That let the king for to land in the low water.  
For-thy he lenged on laye for lesing of horses,  
To look of his lege-men and of his lele knyghtes,  
Yif any were lamed or lost, live yif they sholde.
- Then Sir Gawain the good a galley he takes  
3725 And glides up at a gole with good men of armes;  
When he grounded, for gref he girdes in the water  
That to the girdle he goes in all his gilt weedes,  
Shootes up upon the sand in sight of the lordes,  
Singly with his soppe, my sorrow is the more!
- 3730 With banners of his badges, best of his armes,  
He braides up on the bank in his bright weedes;  
He biddes his barneour: "Busk thos belive  
To you heode batall that on you bank hoves,  
And I ensure you soothe I shall you sew after;
- 3735 Look ye blenk for no brand ne for no bright wepen,  
But berca down of the best and bring them o-dawen!  
Bes not abait of their boste, abide on the erthe;  
Ye have my bannres borene in batailes full hage;
- i.e., the captives'  
foreign
- accompanied with trumpets  
shows himself  
set out
- small bay (gully)  
ran aground; logo
- Rushes  
Alone; small troop  
heraldic devices
- banner bearer; Go quickly  
follow  
blanch  
out of daylight  
Be; abashed

<sup>1</sup> By the time the battle was finished the high tide had passed; / Then was the water near the shore such a shush in very large pools / That the king could not land in the low water. / Therefore, he remained on the deep water for fear of losing his horses.

Alliterative Morte Arthur

- 3740 We shall fell you false, the feld have their souls!  
 Fights fast with the frap, the feld shall be oare! company  
 May I that traitor over-take, torfer him tides If I can; woe  
 That this treason has timbered to my trew lord! built for  
 Of such a engendure full little joy happens, engendering  
 And that shall in this journee be judged full even!"
- 3745 Now they seek over the sand, this soppe at the gainest, small troop  
 Semblis on the soudeours, and settes their dimes; Attack; set on  
 Through the sholdes so sheen shalkes they touch broken  
 With shaftes shivered short of those sheen lances; piercing  
 Derf dines they delt with daggard speres;
- 3750 On the dank of the dew many dode ligges, give; countless  
 Dukes and douspeeres and dubbed knighthes;  
 The doughtiest of Danemark endose are forever! rip  
 Thus those renkes in rowth ritles their beeyes  
 And reches of the richest ureckes distes.
- 3755 There they throng in the thick and thrustes to the erthe  
 Of the throst men three hundred at ones! withdraw  
 But Sir Gawain for gref might not again-stand, Grasp  
 Unbegrippes a spere and to a gome rannes,  
 That bore of gules full gay with goates of silver; arms of red; droplets  
 3760 He girdes him in at the goege with his grim launce throat  
 That the grounden glaive graithes in sonder; point  
 With that busious blade he houses him to die! prepares himself  
 The King of Goteland it was, a good man of armes. Gotland (South Sweden)  
 Their avauitward then all voides there-after, vanguard  
 3765 Als vanquist verrayly with valiant bernes; vanquished; verily  
 Meetes with middle-ward that Mordred ledes; middle guard  
 Our men merkes them so, as them mishappened, advance toward  
 For had Sir Gawain the grace to hold the grene hill,  
 He had worship, iwis, worsnes forever!
- 3770 Bat then Sir Gawain, iwis, he waites him well warlock  
 To wreke on this warlaw that this war moved,  
 And merkes to Sir Mordred among all his bernes,  
 With the Montagues and other grene lordes.  
 Then Sir Gawain was greved, and with a grete will  
 3775 Fewters a fair spere and freshly ascries:

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

"Fabe fostered fode, the fend have thy bones!  
By on thee, felon, and thy false workes!  
Thou shall be dede and undone for thy derf deedes,  
Or I shall die this day, if destainy worthe!"

creature; fiend

*if it be my destiny*

- 3780 Then his enemy with host of outlawed bernes  
All enangels about our excellent knighthes  
That the traitour by treason had tried himselfen;  
Dukes of Danemarke he dighites full soon,  
And leders of Lettow with legions ynow,  
Umbelapped our men with launces full keen,  
Sosdeours and Sarazenes out of sere landes,  
Sixty thousand men, seemly arrayed,  
Sekerly assemblies there on seven score knighthes,  
Sodenly in dischaitte by tho salt strandes.
- 3790 Then Sir Gawain greste with his grey eyen  
For gref of his good men that he guide sholde.  
He wiste that they wounded were and wary for foughthen, *exhausted with fighting*  
And what for wonder and wo, all his wit failed.  
And then sighand he said with syland teres:
- 3795 "We are with Sarazenes beset upon sere halves!  
I sigh not for myself, so help our Lord,  
But for to see us surprised my sorrow is the more!  
Bes doughty today, yon dukes shall be yours!  
For dere Drighnes this day dredes no wepen.
- 3800 We shall end this day als excellent knighthes,  
Ayer to endless joy with angles unwemmed;  
Though we have unwittly wasted ourselven,  
We shall work all well in the worship of Crist!
- 3805 We shall for yon Sarazenes, I seker you my trewth,  
Soupe with our Saviour solemnly in heven,  
In presence of that Precious Prince of all other,  
With prophetes and patriarches and apostles full noble,  
Befoore His freelich face that formed as all!
- 3810 Yonder to yon yaldones! He that yeldes him ever  
Whiles he is quick and in quert, unsquelled with handes,  
Be he never mo saved, ne succoured with Crist,  
But Satanase his soul mowe sink into Hell!"
- creature; fiend  
surrounds  
experienced  
marshals  
Lithuania  
Surrounded  
*deceit*  
*wep*  
flowing tears  
captured  
*Be*  
Go; spedere  
unwarily  
*pledge*  
*Dine*  
*where sons*  
*alive; sound health*  
*may*

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- Then grimly Sir Gawain gripes his wepon;  
 Again that grete batail he graithes him soon,  
 3815 Radly of his rich sword he rightes the chaines;  
 In he shockes his sheld, shantes he no lenger,  
 But all unwise, wodewise, he went at the gainest,  
 Woundes of those widerwinnes with wrakful distes;  
 All welles full of blood there he away passes;  
 3820 And though him were full wo, he wondes but little,  
 But wekes at his worship the wrath of his lord!  
 He stickes steedes in stour and sterenfull knyghtes,  
 That steren men in the stirrups stone-dede they ligge!  
 He rives the rank steel, he rittes the mailles;  
 3825 There might no seek him arrest; his rescoun was passed!  
 He fell in a frensy for ferress of herfe:  
 He fightes and felles down that him before standes!  
 Fell never foy man such fortune in erthe!  
 Into the hole batail hedlings he runnes  
 3830 And harnes of the hardiest that on the erthe lenges,  
 Lecand as a lion he launches them through,  
 Lordes and leders that on the land hoves.  
 Yet Sir Wawain for wo wondes but little,  
 But woundes of those widerwinnes with wonderful distes,  
 3835 Als he that wolde wilfully wasten himselfe,  
 And for wondsome and will all his wit failed,  
 That wode als a wild besto he went at the gainest;  
 All wallowed on blood there he away passes;  
 Ich a wyc may be ware by wreke of another!<sup>1</sup>
- Then he moves to Sir Mordred among all his knyghtes,  
 And met him in the mid-sheld and malles him through,  
 But the shalk for the sharp he shantes a little;  
 He share him on the short ribbes a shaftmond large.  
 The shaft shudderred and shot in the shire berne  
 3845 That the sheddand blood over his shank rannes  
 And shewed on his shin-bawde that was shire burnisht!  
 And so they shift and shove he shot to the erthe,
- Quickly; *caw*  
*pushes*; hangs back  
*madly*  
*enemies*; *wrakful*
- hesitates
- pierces; *surn*
- cleaves; *ripe*
- frenzy
- Befit; *a fayre man*  
*headlong*
- Acting like; *stabs*  
*man*
- hesitates
- enemies
- fierceness; *wilfulness*  
*craziness*
- hammers  
*hangs back*  
*cut; six inches deep*  
*dashed; shining*  
*leg*  
*skin plate; brightly*  
*as; fell precipitously*

<sup>1</sup> *Each man may be warned by vengeance wreaked on another*

Alliterative Morte Arthure

- With the lass of the lance he light on his shoulders  
An acre-lenghe on a laund full lothly wounded.  
3850 Then Gawain gird to the gone and on the grouf falleth;  
All his gref was graithed; his grace was no better!  
He shockes out a short knife sheathed with silver  
And sholdre have stoced him in but no slit happened;  
His hand slipped and slode o-slaist on the mailles  
3855 And the other slyly slinges him under;  
With a trenchand knife the traitour him hitteth  
Through the helm and the hed on high on the braine;  
And thus Sir Gawain is gone, the good man of armes,  
Withouten rescue of reek, and row is the more!  
3860 Thus Sir Gawain is gone that gaied many other;  
Fro Gower to Gernesay, all the grete lordes  
Of Glamour, of Galys land, these galiard knighthes  
For glent of glopising glad be they never!
- King Frederik of Fries faithfully there-after  
3865 Fraises at the false man of our fers knight:  
"Knew thou ever this knight in thy kith rich?  
Of what kind he was comes beknow now the sooth;  
What gone was he, this with the gay armes,  
With this griffon of gold, that is on grouf falleth?  
3870 He has greily greved us, so me God help,  
Gred down our good men and greved us sore!  
He was the sterenesest in stour that ever steel wered,  
For he stonayed our stale and stroyd for ever!"
- Then Sir Mordred with mouth meles full fair:  
3875 "He was makless on molde, man, by my trewth.  
This was Sir Gawain the good, the gladdest of other,  
And the gracioesest gone that under God lived,  
Man hardiest of hand, happiest in armes,  
And the heaviest in hall under heven-rich,  
3880 And the leodliest in leding whiles he live might,  
For he was lion alosed in landes ynow,  
Had thou knownen him, Sir King, in kithe there he lenged,  
His cunning, his knighthood, his kindly workes,  
His doing, his doughtiness, his deedes of armes,
- blow; i.e., Mordred  
full length; hillock  
leaps; on his face  
destined  
draws; sheathed  
stabbed  
slid; under  
the other; slyly herb  
cutting
- pay  
guided  
Guernsey  
Glamorgan; Wales  
sight of horror
- Fries; faithfully  
Inquires of  
family  
on his face
- struck  
wore  
troop
- matchless  
most fortunate  
the kingdom of heaven  
leadership  
praised as

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| 3885  | Thou woldst have dole for his dede the dayes of thy life."  | grieved                                    |
| Yet that traitour als the teres let he fall,<br>Turnes him forth tis and talkes no more.<br>West weepand away and weryes the stounde<br>That ever his werdes were wrought such wandreth to work!<br>at once<br>quickly<br>curses the time<br>faire misery |   |  |
| 3890  | When he thought on this thing it thirled his herte;<br>For sake of his sib-blood sighand he ride;<br>When that renayed reak remembered himselfen<br>Of reverence and riotes of the Round Table,<br>pierc'd<br>kinship<br>renegade   |  |
| 3895  | He romed and repent him of all his rewth workes,<br>Rode away with his rout, resses he so lenger,<br>For rade of our rich king, rive that he sholde.  | mounted: foul deeds<br>fear; arrive; might |
| Then kaires he to Coewwall, care-fall is herte,<br>Because of his kinsman that on the coste ligges;<br>He tarries trembland ay, tidandes to berken.<br>goes   |   |  |
| 3900  | Then the traitour trewned the Tuesday there-fter,<br>Trines in with a trayn treason to work,<br>And by the Tamber that tide his tentes he reres,<br>And then in a mett-while a messenger he sendes<br>set forth<br>Goes; trick<br>the River Tamar<br>short time                   |  |
| 3905  | And what comlich coste the king was arrived,<br>On flood foughten with his fleet and felled them o life;<br>Bade her ferken o-for and flee with her childef<br>Whiles he might wile him away and wis to her speche, <sup>1</sup><br>Ayer into Ireland, into those ouer-mounaines. | down<br>hours after<br>ouer mountains      |
| 3910  | And wonne there in wilderness within tho waste landes.  | live; deserted                             |
| Then sho yermes and yeyes at York in her chamber,<br>Gones full grisly with gretand teres,<br>Passes out of the palais with all her pris maidens,<br>Toward Chester in a charre they chese her the wayes,<br>carriage                                     |   |  |
| 3915  | Dight her even for to die with dole at her herte;<br>Sho kaires to Caerlion and caught her a veil,<br>Askes there the habit in honour of Crist  | i.e., became a man<br>man's garment        |

<sup>1</sup> Until he could get away by stealth and come to speak to her

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

And all for fabled and fraud and forc of her lord!      falsehood; fear; husband

But when our wise king wiste that Gawain was landed.

- 3920 He al to-writhes for wo, and wringand his handes,      writhes violently  
Gars lausch his bootes upon a low water,      Gives orders to  
Landes als a lion with leodlich knighthes,  
Slippes in the sloppes o-slaist to the girdle,      pools; astant  
Swalters up swiftly with his sword drawes,      Splashes  
3925 Bounes his batail and banners displayes,  
Buskes over the beode sand with beethe at his herte,  
Ferkes frely on feld there the fey ligges:  
Of the traitours men on trapped steedes,  
Ten thousand were tist, the trowth so account,  
3930 And, certain, on our side seven score knighthes,  
In suite with their soveraign unsound are believed.      stale  
Together; not whole (dead)

The king comly overcast knighthes and other,

turned over  
Auxilia

- Erles of Afrike and Estriche bernes,  
Of Argyle and Orkney the Irish kinges,  
3935 The noblest of Norway, numbers full huge,  
Dukes and Danemarques and dabbled knighthes;  
And the Gathede king in the gay armes      Gothic  
Lies groanand on the ground and gird through even.  
The rich king rassackes with newth at his herte  
3940 And up ripples the reskes of all the Round Table,  
Sees them all in a sorpe in suite by them one      resches  
With the Saracenes unsound encircled about,  
And Sir Gawain the good in his gay armes,  
Umbegripped the gres and on grouf fallen,  
3945 His banners braiden down, beten of gales,  
His brand and his beode shield all bloody berusnes.  
Was never our seemlich king so sorrowful in herte,  
Ne that sank him so sad but that sight one.<sup>1</sup>

Then gliftes the good king and glopis in herte,

stares; is terror-struck  
weeping

- 3950 Grosses fell grislich with gretande teres,

<sup>1</sup> Nor was there anything that sank him so sad as that sight alone

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- Kneels down to the corse and caught it in arms,  
Castes up his umbrere and kisses him soon.  
Lookes on his eye-liddes that locked were fair,  
His lippes like to the lede and his lire fallowed.
- Then the crownd king cries full loud:  
"Dere cosin of kind in care am I loved,  
For now my worship is weare and my war ended!  
Here is the hope of my heire, my happing in armes,  
My heire and my hardiness holly on him lengod!
- My counsel, my comfort, that kepted mine heire!  
Of all knyghtes the king that under Crist lived!  
Thou was worthy to be king, though I the crown bare!  
My wele and my worship of all this world rich  
Was wornen through Sir Gawain and through his wit onel
- "Alas," said Sir Arthur, "now eckes my soerow!  
I am utterly undone in mine own landes!  
A dourous, derf dede, thou dwelles too long!  
Why drawes thou so on dregh? Thou drownes mine heire!"
- Then sweltes the sweet king and is swoon falleis,  
Swafres up swiftly and sweetly him kisses  
Til his barlich berde was bloody berusnes,  
Als he had beates brittened and brought out of life;  
Ne had Sir Ewain comen and other grete lordes,  
His bold heire had bristen for hale at that stounde!
- "Blian," says these bold men, "thou blunders thyselfe!  
This is botheless bale, for better bes it never!  
It is no worship, twis, to wring thine handes;  
To weep als a woman it is no wit holden!  
Be knightly of countenaunce, als a king sholdre,  
And leve such clamour, for Crises love of hever!"
- "For blood," says the bold king, "blian shall I never  
Ere my brain to-brist or my breste other!  
Was never soerow so soft that sank to my heire;  
It is full sib to myself, my soerow is the more.  
Was never so sorrowful a sight seen with mine eyen!  
He is sakless surprised for sis of mine one!"

corse  
visor

dead; complexion pale

blood relative

well-being good fortune

wealth  
only

increases

fearful cruel death  
delay; so long

faire

Staggers

covered with blood

beats

time

stop; harm

without remedy; will be

cease

shatter; either

closely related

innocent

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- Down kneecles the king and cries full loud,  
With care-full countenaunce he carpes these wordes:  
"O rightwise rich God, this rewth thou behold,  
This real red blood ran spon erthe!"
- 3990    righteous  
It were worthy to be shrede and shrined in gold,  
For it is sakes of sin, so help me our Lord!"
- clothed; enshrin'd  
  innocent
- Down kneecles the king with care at his herfe,  
Caught it up kindly with his clene handes,  
Cast it in a kettle-hat and coverd it fair,  
And kaires forth with the corse in kithe there he lenges.
- "Here I make mine avow," quod the king then,  
"To Messie and to Mary, the mild Queen of heven:  
I shall never rivate ne ratches uncouple,  
At roe ne rein-dene that runnes upon erthe,
- 4000    messiah  
  host; bounds unloose  
Never greyhound let glide, ne goschawk let fly  
Ne never fowl see felled that flighes with wing,  
Faucon ne formel upon fist handle
- minstrel  
  goeshawk  
  flier  
  falcon; female hawk  
Ne yet with gerfaacon rejoice me in erthe,  
Ne regne in my royalees, ne hold my Round Table,
- 4005    goefalcon  
Til thy dode, my dere, be duly revenged!  
But ever droop and dare whiles my life lastes,  
Til Drighten and derf dode have done what them likes!"
- death; believed  
  he will  
  the Lord; cruel death
- Then caught they up the corse with care at their herfes,  
4010 Carried it on a courser with the king selfer;  
The way unto Winchester they went at the gainest,  
Wery and wandsomly with wounded knighthes;
- by the shortest route  
  sorrowfully
- There come the prior of the place and professed monkes,  
A-pas in procession, and with the prince meetes,
- 4015    Quickly  
And he betook them the corse of the knight noble:
- "Lookes it be cleynly keeped," he said, "and is the kirk holden;  
Doe for him diriges, as to the dode fallis,
- church  
  Do; before
- Masked with masses for meed of the soul;  
Look it want no wax, ne no worship elles,
- 4020    Honored; reward  
  See that; lack; candles
- And that the body be baumed and on erthe holden;  
Yif thou keep thy covent, encroch any worship
- embalmed  
  promise claim; reward
- At my coming again, yif Crist will it thole;
- allow

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

Abide of the burying til they be brought under  
That has wrought in this wo and this war moved."

Wait for

- 4025 Then says Sir Wicheire the wye, a wise man of armes:  
 "I rede ye warily wend and workes the best,  
 Sujoers in this citee and semble thy bernes,  
 And bide with thy bold men in the burgh rich;  
 Get out knyghtes of countrees that castels holdes,<sup>1</sup>  
 4030 And out of garrisons gret good men of armes,  
 For we are faithfully too few to fight with them all  
 That we see in his sorte upon the se bankes.

now

- With cruel countenaunce then the king carpes these wordes:  
 "I pray thee care not, sir knight, ne cast thou no dredes!  
 4035 Had I no segge but myself one under sun,  
 And I may him see with sight or on him set handes,  
 I shall even among his men malle him so dede,  
 Ere I of the stede stir half a stod lenghe!  
 I shall strike him in his stour and stroy him forever,  
 4040 And there-to make I mine avow devoutly to Crist  
 And to his moder Mary, the mild Queen of heven!  
 I shall never sujourn sound, ne saught at mine herfe,  
 In citee ne in suburb set upon erthe,  
 Ne yet slomour ne sleep with my slow eyen,  
 4045 Till he be slain that him slogh, if any sleight happen,  
 But ever persew the paganes that my pople destroyed  
 Whiles I may pare them and pinne in place there me likes."

imagine

hammer  
place

devoutly

nor have peace

slumber; heavy  
slew; chance

pursue  
hurt; imprison

- There durst no renk him arrest of all the Round Table.  
 Ne none pay that prince with plesand wordes,  
 4050 Ne none of his lege-men look him in the eyen,  
 So lordly he looks for loss of his knyghtes!  
 Then drawes he to Dorset and dreches no lenger,  
 Drefful, dredless, with droopand tees,  
 Kaires into Cornwall with care at his herfe;  
 4055 The trace of the traitour he trices fall even,

stop  
pacify; pleasing

hesitates  
Sorrowful doubtless

Proceeds  
follows

<sup>1</sup> Get knyghtes who hold your castles from their countrees

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

	And turnes in by the Treatis the traiour to seek, Findes him in a forest the Friday there-after; The king lightes on foot and freshly ascries, And with his freelich folk he has the feld nomen!	River Trew taken
4060	Now ishewes his enny under the wood eves With hostes of alienes full horrible to shew! Sir Mordred the Malbranche, with his much pople, Fouades out of the forest upon fole halves, In seven grete batailles seemlich arrayed,	issues out ill-begotten comes
4065	Sixty thousand men — the sight was full huge — All fightand folk of the fer landes, Fair fitted on frost by tho fresh strandes. And all Arthurs host was armed with knyghtes But eightees handreth of all, entred in rollis.	arranged reckoned by
4070	This was a match un-mete, bat myghties of Crist, To melle with that multitude in those main landes.	unequal save for fight
	Then the royal roy of the Round Table Rides on a rich steed, arrayes his bernes, Buskes his avaentward, als him best likes;	
4075	Sir Ewain and Sir Errak, and other grete lordes Demenes the middle-ward menskfullly there-after, With Morrok and Menediske, myghty of strenghes; Idroos and Alymer, thir avenaent children, Ayers with Arthur with sevyn-score of knyghtes;	Command
4080	He rowles the rewarde redily there-after, The rekenest rody men of the Roand Table; And thus he fitnes his folk and freshly ascries, And sens comfornes his men with knyghtlich wordes:	most active
4085	"I beseech you, sirs, for sake of our Lord, That ye do well today and dredes no wopen! Fightes fersly now and fendes yoselven, Felles down yon foy folk, the feld shall be ours!"	defend fated may they be
4090	They are Sarazenes, yon some, unsound mot they worthel! Set on them sadly for sake of our Lord! Yif us be destained to die today on thin erthe, We shall be heved unto heven ere we be half cold!"	denied lifted
	Look ye let for no lede lordly to work;	

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- |      |   |                                       |
|------|---|---------------------------------------|
| 4095 | Layes you laddes low by the laike end;                  | <i>end of the game</i>                |
|      | Take no test unto me, no tale of me recke;              | <i>Pay no attention; believe</i>      |
|      | Bes busy on my banners with your bright wemens.         | <i>Be; around</i>                     |
|      | That they be strengthely stufed with sterren knighting. | <i>strongly provided</i>              |
|      | And holden lordly on-loft lodes to shew;                |                                       |
|      | Yif any renk them arise, rescue them soon;              | <i>is captured by them</i>            |
|      | Workes now my worship; today my war endes!              |                                       |
| 4100 | Ye wot my wele and my wo, workes as you likes!          |                                       |
|      | Crist comly with crown comfort you all                  |                                       |
|      | For the kindest creatures that ever king led!           |                                       |
|      | I give you all my blessing with a blithe will,          |                                       |
|      | And all Bretons bold, blithe mot ye worthel!"           | <i>may you be glad</i>                |
| 4105 | They pipe up at prime time, approches them ner.         | <i>9 a.m.; approach; nearer</i>       |
|      | Pris men and prestre prove their strengthes;            | <i>Choice; ready</i>                  |
|      | Bremly the berthe-men bragges in trumpes,               | <i>Boldly; buglers; blow</i>          |
|      | In coronettes comlyly, when knighting assemblies;       | <i>horns</i>                          |
|      | And then jollyly enjoynes these gentle knighting;       | <i>join battle</i>                    |
| 4110 | A jollier journee ajudged was never,                    |                                       |
|      | When Bretones boldly embraces their sheldes,            | <i>put on (their arms)</i>            |
|      | And Cristen encrossed them and castes in fowter!        | <i>Christians; crossed themselves</i> |
|      | Then Sir Arthur host his campy escries,                 | <i>army</i>                           |
|      | And in they shock their sheldes, shantes no lenger,     | <i>thrust; delay</i>                  |
| 4115 | Shot to the sheltrones and shoutes fall high;           | <i>troops</i>                         |
|      | Through sheldes full shoen shalkes they touch!          |                                       |
|      | Redily those ryddle men of the Round Table              | <i>fierce</i>                         |
|      | With real rank steel rities their mailles;              | <i>rip</i>                            |
|      | Brenyes broaden they brist and burnisht helmes,         | <i>woven</i>                          |
| 4120 | Hewes hethen men down, halses in sonder!                | <i>necks</i>                          |
|      | Fightand with fine steel the fey blood runnes;          |                                       |
|      | Of the frekest on frost un-sers are believed.           | <i>unfavour (i.e., defeated)</i>      |
|      | Hethenes of Argyle and Irish kinges                     |                                       |
|      | Envirounes our avantward with venomous bernes,          | <i>Surrounds</i>                      |
| 4125 | Pogties and paynimes with perilous wemens,              | <i>Pain</i>                           |
|      | With speses dispitously despouiles our knighting        | <i>pitiably</i>                       |
|      | And hewed down the headest with hertly dimes!           | <i>mortal blows</i>                   |
|      | Through the hole battail they holden their wayes;       |                                       |
|      | Thus ferly they fight upon sere halves,                 | <i>various sides</i>                  |

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- 4130 That of the bold Bretons much blood spilles;  
There durst none rescue them for riches in erthe,  
The sterres were there so stedde and staffled with other;  
He durst not stir a step, but stood for himselfen.  
Til three stakes were strogyed by strenghe of him one!
- 4135 "Idrows," quod Arthur, "ayer thee behooves!  
I see Sir Ewain over-set with Sarazenes kean!  
Redy thee for rescues, array thee soon!  
Hie thee with hardy men in help of thy fader!  
Set in on the side and succour yon lordes!
- 4140 But they be succoured and sound, uniaught be I ever!"
- Idrouis him answers earnestly there-after:  
"He is my fader, in faith, forsake shall I never —  
He has me fostered and fed, and my fair brother —  
But I forsake this gate, so me God help,
- 4145 And soothly all sibreden but thyself one.  
I broke never his bidding for berne on life,  
But ever busom as bestie blithely to work.  
He commaund me kindly with knighthly wordes,  
That I sholde lily on thee lenge, and on no lede elles;
- 4150 I shall his commaundment hold, if Crist will me thole!  
He is elder than I, and end shall we bothen;  
He shall ferke before, and I shall come after;  
Yif him be destained to die today on this erthe,  
Crist, comly with crown, take keep to his soul!"
- 4155 Then romes the rich king with rewth at his herbe,  
Heves his handes on height and to the Heven lookes:  
"Why then ne had Drighien destained at His dere will?  
That He had deemed me today to die for you all?"
- 4160 That had I never than be lord all my life-time  
Of all that Alexander ought whiles he in erthe lenged!"

Sir Ewain and Sir Errak, these excellent bernes,

<sup>1</sup> Why did the Lord not desire (me to die) at His dear will?

Alliterative Morte Arthur

Enters in on the host and egerly strikes;  
The heathenes of Orkney and Irish kings  
They gobone of the gretest with grounden swordes, *i.e., Ewain and Ernak; chop*  
4165 Hewes on those halkes with their hard wopen,  
Layed down those ledes with lothly dantes; *Laid*  
Shoulders and sholdes they shred to the haunches,  
And middles through mailles they merken in sonder!  
Such honour never ought none erthly kinges  
4170 At their ending day bat Arthur himselfen!

So the drought of the day dried their heries  
That both drinkless they die; dole was the more!  
Now melles our middle-ward and mengen togoder,  
Sir Mordred the Malbranche with his mach pople,  
4175 He had hid him behind within these bolt eyes,  
With hole bataill on hethe, harm is the more!  
He had seen the contek all close to the end,  
How our chevalry cheved by chaunces of armes;  
He wiste our folk was for-foughtien that there was foy loved; *oufought; left dead*  
4180 To encounter the king he castes him soon,  
But the cherles chicken had changed his armes;  
He had soothly foesaken the sautouras esgrelod,  
And laught up three lions all of white silver,  
Passand in purpure of perry full rich.<sup>1</sup>  
4185 For the king sholde not know the caatelous wretch. *cunning*  
Because of his cowardice he cast off his attire;  
But the comlich king knew him full swithe,  
Carpes to Sir Cador these kindly wordes:  
"I see the traitour come yonder trizand full yerse; *going*  
4190 Yon lad with the lions is like to himselfen;  
Him shall torfer betide, may I touch ones, *woe; if I can*  
For all his tresoun and trayn, als I am trew lord! *trickery*  
Today Clarent and Calburn shall kithe them togoders *Excalibur; make known*  
Whilk is keoser of carle or harder of edge!  
4195 Fraist shall we fine steel upon fine weedes. *Test*  
It was my darling daintous and full dere holden, (*i.e., the sword Clarent; dainty*

<sup>1</sup> Passant (shown from the side, walking) on a purple background of very rich jewels

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- Kept for encrownmentes of kinges anointed;  
On dayes when I dubbed dukes and erles  
It was barlich borne by the bright blites;  
I darst never dere it in deeds of armes  
But ever kepted clese because of myselfen.  
For I see Clarest uncledde that crown is of swordes,  
My wardrobe at Walingford I wot is destroyed.  
Wiste no wye of wonne but Waynor herselfen:  
She had the keeping herself of that kide wepen,  
Of coffers enclosed that to the crown longed,  
With ringes and reliques and the regale of Fraunce  
That was founden on Sir Frolle when he was fey leved."
- Then Sir Marak in malencoly meenes him soon,  
With a maled mace mightyly him strikes;  
The boordour of his baccenett he bristes in sonder,  
That the shire red blood over his breyn ruancis!  
The berne blenkes for hale and all his blee changes,  
But yet he bides as a boar and brenly he strikes!  
He beedes out a brand bright als ever any silver  
That was Sir Arthur owen, and Utre his fader,  
In the wardrobe at Walingford was wom to be keeped;  
Therewith the derf dog such dintes he reched  
The other withdrew on dregh and drast do nose other  
For Sir Marak was man marred in clide,  
And Sir Mordred was mighty and in his most strenghes;  
Come nose within the compass, knight ne none other,  
Within the swing of sword, that he ne the swet leved.
- That perceives our prince and presses to fast.  
Strikes into the stour by strenghe of his handes,  
Meetes with Sir Mordeed; he meles unfair:  
"Turn, traitour unrew, thou tides no better;  
By grete God, thou shall die with dint of my handes!  
Thee shall rescue no renk ne riches in erthe!"
- The king with Calburn knightly him strikes;  
The camel of his clere sheld he carves in sonder,  
Into the shoulder of the shalk a shaftmonde large

coronations

arm

i.e., drawn

wardrobe

Knew; the dwelling place

regalia

left dead

melancholy

hammers

border; helmer

blanchis; complexion

boar; fiercely

i.e., Mordred

wardrobe

impudent

other; back

weakened by age

lifeblood left

i.e., to battle

melee

speak guffily

cornerpiece

six inches deep

Alliterative Morte Arthure

- That the shire red blood shewed on the mailles?  
He shuddered and shrinkes and shantes but little,  
4235 But shockes in sharply in his sheen weodes;  
The felon with the fine sword freshly he strikes,  
The felettes of the ferrer side he flashes in sonder.  
Through jupon and gesseraunt of gentle mailles,  
The freke ficed in the flesh an half-foot large;  
4240 That derf dint was his dede, and dole was the more  
That ever that doughy sholdie die but at Drightens will!
- Joiner; farther  
gipon (name); hauberk  
pierced  
Aidous blow
- Yet with Caliburn his sword full knightly he strikes,  
Castes in his clere shield and coveres him full fair,  
Swappes off the sword hand, als he by glicates —  
4245 An isch fro the elbow he oched it in sonder  
That he swoones on the swarth and on swim falles —  
Through bracer of beown steel and the bright mailles,  
That the hit and the hand upon the bethe ligges.
- goes  
chopped  
surf, twice  
armguard
- Then freshlich the freke the fente up-reres,  
4250 Broches him in with the brand to the bright hiltes,  
And he brawles on the brand and bounes for to die.  
"In dayc," said the Fey king, "sore me for-thinkes  
That ever such a false thef so fair an end haves."
- Arthur; rent raises  
struggles  
I surely repeat  
thief
- When they had finisht this fight, then was the feld wonnen,  
4255 And the false folk in the feld Fey are believed!  
Til a forest they fled and fell in the greves,  
And fens fightand folk followes them after,  
Hunnes and hewes down the hethen tikes,  
Murtheres in the mountaines Sir Mordred knighthes;  
4260 There chaped never no child, cheftain ne other,  
But choppes them down in the chase; it charges but little!
- groves  
Heathen dogs  
Murder  
escaped  
possibles
- But when Sir Arthur anon Sir Ewain he findes,  
And Errak the avenaunt and other grete lordes,  
He caught up Sir Cadoc with care at his herte,  
4265 Sir Clegis, Sir Cleemond, these clere men of armes,  
Sir Lot and Sir Lionel, Sir Launcelot and Lowes,  
Marrak and Meneduke, that mighty were ever;
- comely

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- With langour in the land there he layes them togeder,  
Looked on their lighames, and with a load steven.  
Als lede that list not live and lost had his mirthes —  
Then he stotays for mad and all his strenghe falles,  
Lookes up to the hilt and all his lire changes,  
Down he sways full swithe, and in a swoon falles,  
Up he coverves on knees and cries full often —  
"King, comly with crown, in care am I leved!  
All my lordship low in land is laid under,  
That me has given guerdones, by grace of Himeslves,  
Maintained my manhood by might of their handes,  
Made me manly on molde and master in erthe,  
In a scounful time this torfer was reved,  
That for a traitour has tift all my trow lordes!  
Here restes the rich blood of the Round Table,  
Rebulked with a rebuld, and rewth is the more!  
I may helpless on hecne house by mine one,  
Als a woful widow that wastes her bernal  
I may weyre and weep and wring mine handes,  
For my wit and my worship away is forever!  
Of all lordshippes I take leve to mine end!  
Here is the Bretones blood brought out of life,  
And now in this joarnee all my joy endes!"

- Then reliess the renks of all the Round Table;  
To the real roy they ride them all;  
Then assemblies fall soon seven score knyghtes  
In sight to their sovereign that was unsound leved;  
4295 Then kneecles the crowned king and cries on load:  
"I thank thee, God, of thy grace, with a good will,  
That gave us vertue and wit to venquishe these bernes,  
And us has graunted the gree of these grete lordes!  
He sent us never no shame ne shenship in erthe  
4300 But ever yet the over-hand of all other kinges;  
We have no leisire now these lordes to seek,  
For you lothly lad me lamed so sore!"

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- 4305 Graith us to Glashenbury; us gaines none other;<sup>1</sup>  
There we may rest us with roo and ransack our wondres. peace; search (treas)  
Of this dene day work the Drighnes be lowed, costly; prised  
That us has detained and deemed to die in our own.<sup>2</sup> i.e., own land
- Then they hold at his host holly at ones, command  
And graithes to Glashenbury the gne at the gainest; Glastonbury; way  
Estores the Ile of Avalon and Arthur he lightes, frie  
4310 Merkes to a manor there, for might he no further; for he could go  
A surgen of Salerne enscherches his wounds; surgeon; treas  
The king sees by assay that sound bes he never, examination; will be  
And soos to his seker men he said these wordes: true  
"Do call me a confessor with Crist in his armes; i.e., the Eucharist  
4315 I will be houseld in haste what hap so betides, gives the Sacrament  
Constantine my cosin he shall the crown bere, allow  
Als becomes him of kind, if Crist will him thole! blessing  
Berne, for my benison, thos bary yon lordes  
That in batall with brandes are brought out of life,  
4320 And sithen merk manly to Morred children, pursue manfully  
That they be sleyt slain and slungen in waters; wily; slay  
Let no wicked weed wax ne writhe on this erthe; grow nor flourish  
I warn, for thy worship, work als I bid!  
I forgive all gref, for Crisses love of heven!  
4325 If Waynor have well wrought, well her betide!"
- He said "In manus" with main on molde where he ligges, "Into Your hands"  
And thus passes his spirit and spakes he no more!
- The baronage of Beotain then, bishoppes and other,  
Graithes them to Glashenbury with glopiaand heries Glastonbury; dismayed  
4330 To bury there the bold king and bring to the erthe person should have  
With all worship and weith that any wye sholde. loudly  
Throly belles they ring and Requiem singes, do  
Dos masses and matins with mornand notes;  
Religios reveste in their rich copes,  
4335 Pontificalles and prelates in peccious weedes, Monastics dressed  
Bishops

<sup>1</sup> Let us go to Glastonbury, nothing else avail.

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- Dukes and douspecces in their dole-cotes,  
Countesses kneeland and claspand their handes,  
Ladies languishand and lowrand to shew;  
All was busked in black, birdes and other,  
That shewed at the sepulture with syland teres;  
Was never so sorrowful a sight seen in their time!
- Thus endes King Arthur, as auctors allege,  
That was of Ectores blude, the kinge son of Troy  
And of Sir Priamous, the prince, peised in erthe;  
Fro thethen brought the Bretons all his bold elders  
Into Bretain the brode, as the Brut sellis.
- Hic jacet Artharus, rex quosdam rexque futurus.  
(Here lies Arthur, king once and king to be.)
- Here endes Morte Arthure, written by Robert of Thornton  
R. Thornton dictus qui scripsit sit benedictus. Amen.  
(May the said R. Thornton, who wrote this, be blessed. Amen.)

mourning garments

frowning

dressed; women

sepulcher; flowing

authorities tell

Hector's blood

Priam

dwane (i.e., Troy)

### *Alliterative Morte Arthure*

The following abbreviations are used in these notes to indicate editorial attribution:

- Ba: Mary Macleod Banks, ed. *An Alliterative Poem of the Fourteenth Century*. London, New York: Longmans, Green and Co., 1900.
- Be: Larry D. Benson, ed. *King Arthur's Death*. Indianapolis and New York: Bobbs-Merrill Company, Inc., 1974.
- Bj: Erik Bjorkman, ed. *Morte Arthure. Alt- und mittelenglische Texte*, 9. Heidelberg and New York: Carl Winter, 1915.
- Br: Edmund Brock, ed. *Morte Arthure or The Death of Arthur*. EETS o.s. 8. London, New York, Toronto: Oxford University Press, New Edition, 1871; reprinted 1961.
- F: the present editor
- GV: E. V. Gordon and Eugene Vinaver, "New Light on the Text of the Alliterative *Morte Arthure*." *Medium Aevum* 6 (1937), 81-98.
- H: Mary Hamel, ed. *Morte Arthure: A Critical Edition*. Garland Medieval Texts, 9. New York and London: Garland Publishing, Inc., 1984.
- K: Valerie Krishna, ed. *The Alliterative Morte Arthure*. New York: Burt Franklin and Company, Inc., 1976.
- OED: Oxford English Dictionary
- OL: J. L. N. O'Loughlin. "The Middle English Alliterative *Morte Arthure*." *Medium Aevum* 4 (1935), 153-168.

- 1      *Himselfen*. On the prominence of reflexive formulas in the poem (*himselfen*, *him fiker*, etc.) as indicators of the will and willfulness, see Peck, pp. 158 ff.
- 29     Uter. Uther Pendragon, Arthur's father.
- 32     Scotland and England were often at war in the fourteenth century, hence *scashel* ("harmful") Scotland.
- 37     Grace. The MS reading. Most editors emend to *Greece* (Greece) but *Grace* (Grasse) makes more geographical sense. Grasse is a small city in southern

### Notes

- France, north of Cannes, which was an episcopal see from 1244 to 1790. K retains *Grâce*.
- 41 *Pienné*. Ackerman suggests Vienna, though K thinks, rather, that it must refer to a town north of Valence or a district in Poitier.
- 42 *Overgne* (Ba, Be, K, H). I.e., Auvergne. MS: *Engie*.
- 47 I.e., the whole extent of Denmark.
- 61 *Caerleon*. One of Arthur's principal cities where, according to the chronicles, he often spent Pentecost. K suggests that the reference to the city's "curious walleys" may derive from Giraldus' description of the city: "[Caerleon] was of undoubted antiquity, and handsomely built of masonry, with courses of bricks, by the Romans. Many vestiges of its former splendour may yet be seen; immense palaces . . . a tower of prodigious size, remarkable hot baths, relics of temples, and theatres, all enclosed within fine walls, parts of which remain standing. You will find on all sides, both within and without the circuit of the walls, subterraneous buildings, aqueducts, underground passages, and what I think worthy of notice, stoves contrived with wonderful art, to transmit the heat insensibly through narrow tubes passing up the side walls" (p. 164).
- 64 *Carlisle*. Here, Arthur's new city, located on the Scottish border; another favorite site for Arthur's festivities, according to Froissart. The Middle English romance *Sir Gawain and the Carl of Carlisle* suggests the city's foundation at a place where courtesy turned monstrosity to civility.
- 66 *douze peers*. Originally Charlemagne's twelve peers, but here simply "high noblemen."
- 68 A *bannerman* was a senior knight entitled to bear his own banner; a *bocheler* ranked somewhat lower and was either a newly made knight or a young man about to be knighted.
- 77 *West Marches*. The territories bordering Wales.
- 79 The bread is the first course (since the other food was heaped upon it), and the first course is the traditional time for the arrival of a messenger. Compare *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight*, lines 116-132.

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- 86 *Lucius Iberiar*: "The Emperor Lucius was apparently invented by Geoffrey of Monmouth [*History of the Kings of Britain*], who calls him Lucius Tiberius. . . . The attempt at a reconquest of Britain by the Romans in the sixth century also derives from Geoffrey" (K, p. 165).
- 92 *Lemass Day*: a harvest festival formerly celebrated on August 1.
- 95 Prime was "the first hour of the day, beginning at six-o'clock throughout the year or at the varying times of sunrise" (OED).
- 105 The Romans held title to Britain on the basis of Caesar's conquest, as recorded in chronicles based ultimately on Book V of Geoffrey of Monmouth's *History of the Kings of Britain*.
- 108 route. "Ambiguous: either 'snore' (OE *Arutar*), an expression of Lucius's angry contempt, or more neutrally 'go, travel' (OF *router*), a contrast rather than a parallel to *ryste* (rest)" (H, p. 257).
- 134 *There is* (Br, Be, K). MS: *thare*.
- 142 *crowned war* (Bj, Be, K). MS: *corounde*.
- 168 Chambers with chimneys are heated rooms, a luxury at this time. See note to line 61.
- 176ff. The elaborate feast that follows might actually have been served at a royal household of the late fourteenth century. Menus for royal feasts are printed in *Two Fifteenth-Century Cooking Books*, ed. Austin, EETS o.s. 91 (London, 1888; reprinted 1964). See H's extensive notes on the dishes and feast practices of the later fourteenth century (pp. 259-63).
- 178 *agger* (OL, Be). MS: *agerr*. H reads *agger*; Br and K follow MS.
- 186 whom, MS; whence. Bj, Be, and H emend to when or whan, but I have followed Br and K in retaining MS sense.
- 200 *Creve*. The poet regularly identifies wines by their place of origin. The universality of Arthur's wine cellar is impressive.

*Notes*

- 213 The virtues (powers) of precious stones were commonplace in the Middle Ages. See *English Medieval Lapidaries*, eds. Evans and Scraseon, EETS o.s. 190 (London, 1932; reprinted 1960).
- 233 Waynor and Gwynor for Guinevere are used interchangeably as are Gwain and Wawain for Gawain.
- 234 Sir Owghtreth. Sir Owghtreth of Tarry is evidently one of Arthur's vassals. Terry perhaps is Teris, Italy. J. L. N. O'Loeglin, "The Middle English Alliterative *Morte Arthure*," *Medium Aevum* 4 (1935), 159, suggests that he is one of Lucius' ambassadors, who out of courtesy is assigned with Gawain to accompany the Queen.
- 245 Giawnter Towr. Since giants occupied Britain before the arrival of Brutus, this tower is, presumably, a "prehistoric" edifice.
- 256 deffear. Be and H emend to dinare, but I have followed Br and K in retaining MS.
- 277 In Book III of Geoffrey's *History* we are told that, long before Caesar came to Britain, Belinus and Brennus conquered and ravaged Rome. This is, of course, not historical.  
"Baldwin the Third is unknown; perhaps he was invented for the sake of alliteration" (K, p. 169).
- 282 According to Geoffrey (Book V, chapter 6) Constantine was the son of a Roman Senator and a British Princess, and he succeeded to the kingship of Britain. Then he overthrew the Emperor Maxentius and became Emperor. According to legend, his mother, Helen, discovered the True Cross. Arthur claims kinship with Constantine because of his supposed British mother. Constantine actually did proclaim himself Caesar while in York, but he was never king of Britain and not of British descent.
- 288 King Aungers. Robert W. Ackerman, *An Index of Arthurian Names in Middle English* (Stanford: Stanford University Press, 1952), p. 20, identifies King Aungers as Geoffrey of Monmouth's Augusclus, a king of Scotland, son of Bryadens, grandson of Igerna, and brother of Lot and Urien. He was, like Lot, an enemy of Arthur who later became an ally.

*Afflitterative Morte Arthur*

- 297 The *vernacle* (the relic of Veronica) is the handkerchief with which St. Veronica wiped the face of Christ on His way to the Crucifixion. Miraculously, the image of His face was preserved on the handkerchief, which still survives. The cult of Veronica was especially strong in the fourteenth century. Pope John XXII granted an indulgence of ten thousand days for a prayer to the Veronica, and its legend had an important part in the popular romances about Titus and Vespasian.
- 301 elder. Bj and Be emend to *monthes*, but I have followed Br., K., and H in retaining MS. It probably means "of two generations".
- 304 *Berne of Britain the Little*. King Hoel of Brittany.
- 305 *beseekes*. MS. *beskys*. Bj and Be emend to *congre beseeker*, but I have followed Br., K., and H in adhering to the MS reading.
- 320 *The Welsh king*. Perhaps Sir Valiant (line 2064).
- 334 *Of Wyghte and*. GV and Be emend to *of wightest*; H emends to *of wyghe men*, but I have followed Br. and K. in retaining MS.
- 337 *Sir Ewain fitz Urien*. Iwain son of Urien and Morgan le Fay.
- 352 *Petersand* (Petraranta, i.e., the Vatican); *Piu* (Pisa); *Poant Tremble* (Postremoli).
- 368-70 "Lancelot, the great hero of the Vulgate tradition, was unknown in the earlier chronicles. In introducing him as one of the 'lesse men' among Arthur's retainers, the poet gives his audience a clear signal: this poem will not be concerned with the issues and themes of that tradition" (H, p. 268).
- 369 *love*. H reads *lose* and translates the line "I praise God for this contribution" (H, p. 268).
- 375 *Gensives* (Genoese): "The notorious giants from Genoa in Laius' army may derive from the Genoan mercenaries who fought with France against Edward III at Crecy and other important battles" (K, p. 170).
- 391 *raskes*. Not *raskes* (men) but *raskes* (paths) from OF *rasc*.

*Notes*

- 415 *Epiphany*. From the Greek for "appearance" or "manifestation," it is the feast on January 6, commemorating the coming of the Magi to see the child Jesus and symbolizing the "manifestation" of the newborn savior to the whole world (*OED*).
- 450 *Watling Street*. The old Roman road leading from the southern coast by way of London to Cardigan in Wales.
- 451 *nyghte* (Bx, K). MS: *nyghmer*. "The appearance of *nyghte* in the same line is very likely the source of the scribal error" (K, p. 171).
- 458 *littre*. Bj, Be, and H emend to *lefte*, but I have followed Br and K in retaining MS.
- 471 *sixteen* (Bj, Be, K, H). MS: *six sum of six*. "Either 'part of a company of six' or 'along with a company of six'. . . . In either case the number given [in the MS] is inconsistent with that of line 81, where the Senator arrives with a company of sixteen" (K, p. 171).
- 482 *Catrik*. A town in Yorkshire, identified with the Roman cataractonium.
- 490 Sandwich is the port from which the Romans will take ship. One of the "cinque ports," Sandwich is the site of the Church of St. Peter where curfew, now ceremonial, was rung.
- 497 *Mount Godard*. One of the principal passes through the French Alps into Italy.
- 513 *sandes*. Bj, Be, and H emend to *sandeman*, but I have followed Br and K in retaining MS.
- 515 *wye* (Ol., Be, K, H). MS: *waye*. Br's emendation.
- 572 *Ambiganye* and *Orage* are apparently in the East. H emends to *Arage*, the OF spelling of Arcadia. *Ambiganye*, she suggests, could be Albania.
- 575 *Irritane* (Hyrcania) and *Elamet* (Elam) are not islands but countries in Asia.

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- 587 Bayour. Be omends to boyer; H omends to baron, but I have followed Br and K in retaining MS. This is an odd location in the context, but the suggested emendations are not persuasive. Bayonne (Beune) is in southwestern France.
- 588 Prester John was thought to be a Christian ruler living somewhere in the Orient. In *The Travels of Sir John Mandeville* (a famous fourteenth century book of fictitious travels, presented as a true account), Prester John is said to be the Emperor of India, allied by marriage to the great Khan of China. The legend was probably based on reports of Christian communities which actually did exist in the East. Pamphile is a region of Asia Minor.
- 604-05 Prussland (Prussia) and Lettow (Lithuania) were still pagan in the fourteenth century.
- 625 The octave of St. Hillary's day would be a week after January 24.
- 628-29 Cormarise (the Peninsula of Cosenin) and Bayfleure (Barfleur) are on the coast of Normandy.
- 656 Arthur's concern for the protection of his game is not surprising in a century when (as shown by *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight*) hunting was of great importance to the aristocracy.
- 674 wordles. MS: wendez. Bj, K, H read werfijde?.
- 716 Sways (Bj, Be), MS: Twys.
- 734 Hackes. MS: Hakes. K omends to Hekes. H follows MS on grounds that hakes are outergarments or possibly "caparisons for horses" (*MED*, s.v.); she finds Bj's emendation Aackes to be redundant if paired with hackneys.
- 769 Be, following GV, supplies a supposed missing line after 769: *His tail was stottered with songes ful hage*; K notes but does not accept the insertion. H accepts. I have followed K.
- 771 Be, following GV, supplies a supposed missing line after 771: *And his clawes were enclosed with clene gold*; K does not note. H accepts. I have not included the line.

### Notes

- 785 *at.* Be notes MS *at*, but prints *ir*. I have retained the MS reading as do Br and K. H deletes the word, explaining that the scribe miscopied the following to which he then corrected by writing *to* but failed to cross out the *at*.
- Rapped*, H suggests, means "barked," not dashed to earth, which is inconsistent with the flying posture.
- 804 *string*. MS: *brynge*. Holthausen's emendation, followed by Bj, Be, and K. H suggests *brees*, meaning "frighten, terrify." See her note discussing the problem. Br follows MS.
- 808 *seven science*. The seven liberal arts (grammar, rhetoric, logic, which were the trivium, and arithmetic, geometry, astronomy, music, which were the quadrivium); these were the basis of Medieval education.
- 812 Second half of 812 appears in the MS as the second half of 813 and vice versa (Bj, Be). K and H disagree, but I have followed Be.
- 821 *nattered* (Bj, Be, K, H). MS: *nascherenede*. Br: *nocherenede*.
- 841 *Templar*. A member of the Knights Templar, a military order founded c. 1118 for the protection of the Holy Sepulchre and pilgrims visiting the Holy Land. The order was suppressed in 1312.
- 848 *countrie of Constantine*. The country around Cosenin, a peninsula on the coast of Normandy.
- 880 The promontory is Mont-Saint-Michel, on which, according to this story, Arthur founds the famous monastery to commemorate his victory. See also line 899.
- 905 *jupon*. A gipon is a sleeveless cloth garment worn over the armor; Arthur's is *jagged in shredes* — with fashionable scallopings at the edges. *Jerodine* is apparently a kind of cloth (perhaps gabardine).
- 910 *ensarmed*. Bj and Be emend to *ensmelled*, but I have followed Br, K, and H in retaining MS.
- 946 *them*. MS: *thus*. Br, K, and H retain MS.

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- 964 *Wade*. A figure in German legend and a now-lost English romance.
- 1028 *pisent*. Wine mixed with honey and spices.
- 1041 *sowce* (Bj, Be). MS: *sowre*. Br and K retain MS. H emends to *sowfe*.
- 1083 *eyen-holes* (Bj, Be). MS: *hole eyghn*. Br, K, and H retain MS.
- 1123 *gesitalr* (Bj, Br, Be, K, H). MS: *gesitaner*.
- 1142 *buker*. Bj and Be emend to *wild buker*, but I have followed Br and K in retaining MS.
- 1175 A reference to the giant Fitho, whom Arthur slew "in Aravio Monsem" (in the mount of Araby), the Aras mountains in Wales. The story is from Geoffrey of Monmouth, *History of the Kings of Britain*, Book X.
- 1225 *Castel Blank* is unique in this poem.
- 1231 *mese·while*. GV, Be, and H emend to *mere·while*, but I have followed Br and K in retaining MS even though the emendation is plausible.
- 1248 *frayer* (Bj, Be, K). MS: *fraser*. Br and H retain MS.
- 1263 *Sir Bois*. Earl of Oxford. "The name Bos (Boso de Vado Boam in Geoffrey [of Monmouth] was probably invented by Geoffrey as a pun on *bor* and Oxford" (Ackerman, p. 38).
- 1264 *Sir Berille*. Perhaps Borel, Earl of Mann, who fights on Arthur's side and is given Le Mans.
- 1265 *Sir Grime*. Bj emends to Geryn of Chartres, one of Arthur's vassals who appears at this point in the chronicles and also in line 3708. Grime is not known elsewhere.
- 1281 *with* (Bj, Be, K, H). MS: *that with*. Br follows MS.
- 1302 *worthy* (Bj, Be, K). MS: *worthethly*. Br and H retain MS.

Notes

- 1334 Appears in MS as line 1330 (Bj, Be, H).
- 1364 *sable* (Bj, Be, K, H). MS: *salle*. Br follows MS.
- 1378 *anabolist all*. Bj and Be emend to *all unabait*, but I have followed Br, K, and H in retaining MS word order and have punctuated to make the grammatical relation clear.
- 1402-02 The perious water that falls from the sea fifty miles away apparently refers to a tidal estuary (n.b. *salt strander* in line 1422).
- 1405 I agree with H that *change* should be taken as a hunting metaphor: to "change" attention from prey to prey.
- 1408 *all* (Bj, Be). MS: *and*; *Bedvere* (Be, H). MS: *Bedwyse*. Br and K retain both MS readings. Perhaps a miswriting of *Baldwin*, who appears in lines 1606 and 2384.
- 1427 *relier*. Be emends to *relier*, but I have followed Br, K, and H in retaining MS.
- 1436 *stoker*. Br and Be emend to *stroke*, but K notes that emendation is unnecessary, citing *OED* *stroke* sb2 (p. 182). H follows MS too.
- 1466-67 Appear in MS in reverse order (Be). I have followed K, H in retaining MS order.
- 1503 *not* (Bj, Be). MS: *now*. Br, K, and H follow MS.
- 1558 *Sir Ewain fitz Henry*. Probably Sir Ewain fitz Urien, as in line 337. Ackerman notes that he is given both names in Layamon's *Br* as well (p. 248).
- 1567 *aihander* (Bj, Be, H). MS: *aiy?ander*. Br and K retain MS spelling, as a variant of *giantis*.
- 1622 *Sir Evander*. King of Syria and one of Lucius's vassals.
- 1638 *Sir Clegis, Sir Cleremus, Sir Cleremond*. Sir Clegis is a knight of the Round Table. Either Sir Cleremus and Sir Cleremond might allude to Clarius of

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

Clerc Moustic who appears in other romances aiding Launcelot in his war against Arthur. Here the pair fill out the alliterative quatrain.

- 1653 *kith* (Bj, Be, K, H). MS: *lythe*. Br retains MS but glosses: "Read *Kythe*."
- 1681 Clegis challenges the Romans to a formal tournament, with three courses of war (that is, three jousts with the lance) and the claims of knighthood (the winner to take the horse and arms of the loser.)
- 1683 Clegis' insult, like the King of Syria's, is part of the formal "flyting."
- 1688 *hufe*. Bj and Be emend to *long*, but I have followed Br, K, and H in retaining MS. The charge that Clegis is trying to delay things is only a *pro forma* insult. More significant is the King of Syria's inquiry about Clegis' ancestry, since it would be beneath his dignity to joust with any but the highest noble.
- 1690 *crest* (Bj, Be, H). MS: *brestir* (Br, K).
- 1695 Sir *Brat*. The legendary founder of Britain. According to Geoffrey of Monmouth he was the great-grandson of Aeneas of Troy.
- 1698 *Forthly* (Be). MS: *fro the*.
- Brat* (Bj, Be, H). MS: *Borghze* (Br, K).
- 1732 *ow*. Bj, Be, and H emend to *on the*, but I have followed Br and K in retaining MS.
- 1744 *Wawayne*. Bj, Be, and H emend to *Bawdyne*, but I have followed Br and K in retaining MS.
- 1745 *Rowlaundes* (Bj, Be, H). MS: *and Rowlanderz* (Br, K).
- 1768 *all on load* (Bj, Be). MS: *a laundone* (Br, K, H).
- 1786 *corn-bote*. Literally a fine paid in grain.
- 1797 *in air* (Bj, Be, K). MS: *hir ire* (Br). H argues that MS reads *ir his*.

*Notes*

- 1855 I.e., the Saracens are six feet from the waist up.
- 1866 *Cordewa*. Bc and H emend to *Cornen*, but I have followed Br and K in retaining MS.
- 1878 men. Bj, Bc, and H emend to *Arthen men*, but I have followed K in retaining MS.
- 1904 *Usoy* (Bj, Bc, K, H). MS: *Pierre* (Br). Uther, Arthur's father, is dead. Utolfe appears in lines 1622 and 1868, along with Evander, as knights on the Roman side.
- 1908 *Carour* (K, H). MS: *Barour*. Br emends to *Barouar*.
- 1911 *Sarazenes ynow* (Bj, Bc, K). MS: *saracenes*.
- 1912 *arr* (Bj, Bc, H). MS: *a* (Br, K).
- 1930 *never berne* (Bj, Bc). MS: *never* (Br, K, H).
- 1938 *Though* (Bc). MS: *Thoſt* (Br, K, H).
- 1979 *them*. Bj and Bc emend to *then*, but I have followed Br, K, and H in retaining MS.
- 1980 *Aaſſr*. Bj and Bc emend to *side*, but I have followed Br, K, and H in retaining MS.
- 1982 *Waler* (Bj, Bc, H). MS: *Vylaris* (Br, K).
- 2016 *sees*. Bj and Bc emend to *him sees*, but I have followed Br, K, and H in retaining MS.
- 2047 The knights of the Round Table fulfill the vows they made; the King of Wales fulfills the vow he made in lines 330-32.
- 2066 *Ewain fitz Urien* (Bj, Bc, K, H). MS: *Ewayne sir Fytz Vriene* (Br). Ewain fitz Urien fulfills the vow he made in lines 357-63.

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- 2073 Lancelot had vowed (lines 372-77) to strike down the emperor himself, and accordingly he now strikes him down and leaves a spear stuck in his belly. The emperor evidently recovers very quickly, for he is soon back in battle.
- 2081 Lot had vowed to be the first to ride through the Roman ranks (lines 386-94), which he now does. When Lot has accomplished this, the vows are all fulfilled and the battle proper begins.
- 2108 *herthr* (Bj, Be, K). MS: *heyghe* (Br, H).
- 2112 *Jonathal* (OL, Be, H, K). MS: *Ienitall* (Br). Jonathal appears in a corresponding passage in Geoffrey of Monmouth.
- 2123 Caliburn is used for Excalibur by Geoffrey of Monmouth.
- 2151 *on folde* (Bj, Be, K). MS: *figured folde* (Br). H emends to *faireste-figured feide*.
- 2157 *Sir Cleremond the noble* (Bj, K). MS: *with cleve men of armes* (Br). Be, H have *Sir Bedvere the rich*, but Cleremond the noble is as familiar a formula and improves the alliteration.
- 2180 *real rank* (Bj, Be, H). MS: *reali* (K). Br reads *ysalle*. The addition of *rank* so much improves both rhythm and alliteration that a scribal omission seems likely.
- 2181 *sw* (K). MS: *and* (Br, H).
- 2198 *into*. Bj, Be, and H emend to *into the*, but I have followed Br and K in retaining MS.
- 2217 *chir*. Bj, Be, and H emend to *stricker*, but I have followed Br and K in retaining MS.
- 2250 *at*. Bj, Be, and H emend to *all*, but I have followed Br and K in retaining MS.
- 2280 *fighte*. Bj and Be emend to *fiere*, but I have followed Br, K, and H in retaining MS.
- 2283 *cokadrinser* (Be, K, H). MS: *sekadrinser* (Br).

*Notes*

- 2286     *dromedaries* of (Bj, Be, H). MS: *of dromondaries* (Br).
- 2288     *Offender* (Bj, Be, K). MS: *eʃayder* (Br, H).
- 2305     *he lenged* (Br, Be, K, H). MS: *lengede*. The colours are the heraldic devices on the banners set above the caskets.
- 2328     *ne*. Bj, Be, and H emend to *we ne*, but I have followed Br and K in retaining MS.
- 2343     *full monre*. Bj and Be emend to *full of the monre*, but I have followed Br and K in retaining MS.
- 2358     Br, Bj, Be, and H all emend MS *fowre* to *ten*. "However, though the messenger is presumably referring in 2358 to the tribute that Arthur's court owed and had not paid for four score winters, Arthur in 2344 is referring to something else — the tribute from Rome to his own kingdom that was lost in his ancestors' days" (K, 187).
- 2384     *Sir Bedwar the rich*. Apparently not the same knight as *Sir Bedwere the rich* who was buried in line 2379. See Bj, p. 158, and K, pp. 187–88, on defects in lines 2371–85.
- 2386     *the Auguste*. Ol, Be, and H emend to *Auguste*, but I have followed Br and K in retaining MS.
- 2390     *Christofer day*. St. Christopher's day, July 25. St. Christopher has since been de-canonized.
- 2398     *Lorraine the leie*. Bj and Be emend to *of Lorraine the leye*, but I have followed Br, K, and H in retaining MS.
- 2403     *to* (K). MS: *and*.
- 2408     *Turkar* (Ba, Be, K, H). MS: *Turkayne* (Be).
- 2418     *is in* (Bj, Be, K, H). MS: *es* (Br).
- 2419     *Citee* (Br, Be, K, H). MS: *Pety*.

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- 2424 Br, Be, and H note MS *beneſide*: *bended* (Bj). K emends to *bendyde*.
- 2438 *fende*. Bj and Be emend to *rafe*, but I have followed K and H in retaining MS.
- 2478 *pilater*. Bj and Be emend to *plaster*, but I have followed K in retaining MS.
- 2495 *Wecharde*. Be emends to *Wicher*, but I have followed K in retaining MS.
- 2519 *withouten any bome* (Bj, Be, K, H). MS: *with bivorne ony bome*.
- 2521 *glossenande*. Be and H emend to *glezenand*, but I have followed K. Instead of glossing in gold the table (black) grayhounds are lying couchant,
- 2522 *and* (Bj, Be, K, H). MS: *a* (Br).
- 2531 *the lange* (Bj, Be, H). MS: *a launde* (Br, K).
- 2568 *railed* (K). MS: *raylled* (Br). Bj and Be emend to *railed*.
- 2586 *Salerne*. Salerno. The University of Salerno was famous in the Middle Ages for its medical school.
- 2588 Be follows GV suggestion to insert two lines to follow 2588: *That I might be  
christened, with chrism anointed, / Become meek for my misdeeds for meed of my  
soul.*
- 2594 *legassance and land* (OL, Be). MS: *legassance* (Br, K). H emends to *andir whar  
legassance*.
- 2648 It would be dishonorable for Priamus to be defeated by an ordinary soldier. Gawain is such a great knight that even to be defeated by him is an honor that Priamus would prize even if no one were to learn of it.
- 2663 Be, following GV, inserts the following after 2663: *For here hoves at thy hand  
an hundred good knyghtes.* H agrees, but I have followed Br and K in omitting the line.
- 2664 *For they are*. Be emends to *they are*, but I have followed Br, K, and H in retaining MS.

*Notes*

- 2675 *slyte* (Bj, Be, K). MS: *slaughe*. H emends to *a slaughe*.
- 2680 *Wecharde* (K). MS: *Wychere*.
- 2705 The four wells of Paradise (which were thought to be in the East) were celebrated for their magical qualities (one was the Fountain of Youth) and thought to be the sources of the four great rivers of the East — the Nile, the Ganges, the Tigris, and the Euphrates.
- 2771 *brest* (Bj, Be, H). MS: *brestir* (Br, K).
- 2797 *and* (Bj, Be, H). MS: *a* (Br, K).
- 2854 *Thought* (Bj, Be). MS: *Thoſt* (Br, K, H).
- 2868 *Uewine*. A legendary hero of the Goths, probably known to the poet from a lost English romance.
- Absalom*. Absalom (2 Samuel 13-19), celebrated in medieval romance for his personal beauty.
- 2876 The adventure in the vale of Josephat, to which the *genes* refer, is an episode in the *Fuerre de Gaderes*, a story of the Crusades.
- 2890 *Gerard* (Bj, Be, H). MS: *Ierasse* (Br, K).
- 2891 He stabs him through a gyronny shield (a shield decorated with two colors divided into triangles).
- 2908 *Giuonter*. Bj and Be emend to *giuonter* are, but I have followed Br, K, and H in retaining MS.
- 2940 *duke dresser* (Bj, Be, H). MS: *duke* (Br, K).
- 2950 *Marches*. MS: *macher* (Br). Be emends to *matchless*, but I have followed K and H.
- 2951 *middle-erthe*. "The earth, as placed between heaven and hell, or as supposed to occupy the centre of the universe" (*OED*).

*Alliterative Morte Arthur*

- 2977 *sleghe* (Bj, Be, K, H). MS: *elagere* (Br).
- 3013 *er herre* (Bj, Be, H). MS: *the besse* (Br, K).
- 3031 *in Hampton*. According to H, the phrase "indicates that the messenger's reward is not simply a lump sum but an estate worth £100 a year – a princely gift for a mere herald" (p. 351).
- 3057 *none* (GV, Be, H). MS: *no* (Br, K).
- 3061 *be deemed* (Bj, Be, K). MS: *idene the* (Br). H emends to *indeue the*, meaning "endow you" or "provide you with a livelihood."
- 3064 *he*. Bj and Be emend to *she*, but I have followed K and H in retaining MS.
- 3067 MS lines 3068-3083 are moved by Be to become lines 3112-3127. Although H agrees with Be, I have followed K in leaving them in their MS position.
- 3074 *knightie*. GV, H, and Be emend to *king*, but I have followed Br and K in retaining MS.
- 3101 He crosses over Lake Lucerne into Switzerland.
- 3117 *Siley*. MS: *nsl* (Br). Bj and Be emend to *skathel*, but I have followed K.
- 3140 *for Pawnce and for* (Bj, Be, H, K). MS: *of Pawnce and of*. Br: *Plesaunce* (Piacenza), *Pawnce* (Posto), and *Pownte Tremble* (Postremole) are towns in Lombardy.
- 3150 *thus wele timed*. GV and Be emend to *him time sensed*, but I have followed Br, K, and H in retaining MS.
- 3186 *sceptre and swerde*. MS: *his ceperc* (Br). Be emends to *sceptre*, *for rooth*, but I have followed K. H emends to *ceperc forsoche*.
- 3209 *honden*. Bj and Be emend to *holde*, but I have followed K in retaining MS. H emends to *homuren*.

### Notes

- 3212 *Cross-day*: Rogation Days, three special days of prayer preceding Ascension Day (forty days after Easter).
- 3220 *sakes his* (Bj, Be). MS: *sakes* (Br, H, K).
- 3241 *clerewort*. Bj and Be emend to *clerewort*, but I have followed Br, K, and H in retaining MS.
- 3251 Dame Fortanc, with her *Wheel of Fortanc*, is a familiar figure in late Medieval poetry, as are the Nine Worthies whom Arthur sees in his dream. The Nine Worthies first appear in fourteenth century works such as *The Parliament of Three Ages* and reappear as late as Shakespeare's *Midsummer Night's Dream*.
- 3256 *With brouches* (Bj, Be, H). MS: *broucher* (Br, K).
- besunter are coins, originally from Byzantium, here coin-shaped golden discs.
- 3257 *Her back* (Bj, Be, H). MS: *With air hole* (Br, K).
- 3263 *riches* (Bj, Be, K). MS: *riched* (Br), but K thinks MS may read *reches* anyway.
- 3272 *shir* (Bj, Be). MS: *shir* (Br, K). H reads *shi*.
- roo* (Bj, Be, K). MS: *rog* (Br, H).
- 3282 *tow eye* (Bj, Be, K, H). MS: *tow eyne* (Br).
- 3308 *folded* (Bj, Be, K). MS: *fayled* (Br). H emends to *folded in*.
- 3345 Frollo was the ruler of France whom Arthur killed in single combat when he conquered that country as part of the conquests that immediately precede the action of this poem and that are summarized in the opening lines. The story is told in Geoffrey of Monmouth's *History of the Kings of Britain*, Book IX, chapter 11, where Arthur's adversary is called Follo, and in Wace's *Braut* (which our poet may have known), where he is called Frolle or Follo.
- 3352 *cripond* (Bj, Be, H). MS: *krispane* (Br, K).
- 3356 *Circled* (Bj, Be, K, H). MS: *Selkynde* (Br).

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- 3408-10 Alexander the Great, Hector of Troy, and Julius Caesar are the three Pagan Worthies.
- 3412-16 Judas Maccabeus, Joshua, and King David are the three Jewish Worthies.
- 3422 *tone climated kyng* (Bj, Be, H). MS: *two clymbande kynger*.
- 3423 Karolus (Charlemagne) is the first of the three Christian Worthies. The second is Godfrey of Bouillon (line 3430), and the third is Arthur himself.
- 3427 *hfelich*. Bj and Be emend to *loveliche*, but I have followed Br, K, and H in retaining MS.
- 3434 He shall recover the cross when he conquers Jerusalem. Godfrey's deeds, like Charlemagne's (lines 3423-29), are prophesied, since Arthur historically precedes both.
- 3439 *ninde* (Bj, Be). MS: *synne* (Br, K, H).
- 3470 Be interprets *rowme* ("roomy, or full-cut") to be fashionable, as he does the *shreddes and shragges* ("scalloped edges") in line 3473, but I am inclined to agree with H that the stranger is dressed quite unfashionably.
- 3474 *slawin*. Bj and Be emend to *scalvin* ("pilgrim's garb"), but I have followed Br, K, and H in retaining MS.

The scallop shells were the mark of a pilgrimage to St. James of Compostela in Spain, the palm branch of a pilgrimage to the Holy Land.

- 3480 *worthe* (Bj, Be, H). MS: *wawthe* (Br, K).
- 3505 Be reverses 3505 and 3506, but I have followed Br, K, and H in retaining MS.
- 3510 *I*. Bj and Be emend to *I was*, but I have followed K and H in retaining MS.
- 3530 *Of* (Bj, Be). MS: *To* (Br, K, H).
- 3541 From the Humber River (at the southern border of Yorkshire) to the town of Hawick (in southern Scotland), i.e., the whole North Country.

### Notes

- 3545 Heonest and Horsa were traditionally the first Germanic (that is, Anglo-Saxon) invaders of Britain; Geoffrey of Monmouth (*History*, Book VI, chapter 11) gives the traditional account.
- 3592 *trome*. Bj, Be, and H emend to *trumpe*, but I have followed Br and K in retaining MS.
- 3605 Lines 3605 and 3606 appear in reverse order in the MS (Be).
- 3611 Apparently the painted cloths (sewn together and doubled) are meant to serve as a protection against arrows.
- 3648-49 The maiden on the *chef*, the upper third of the shield, is the Blessed Virgin, who is holding the Christ-child, the *Chef* or Lord of heaven. In 3650 the sense seems to be "noble."
- 3650 Arthur will not change his arms to disguise himself even when hard-pressed, as Mordred later does (lines 4181-85).
- 3662 *Wefer* (Be). MS: *With air* (Br, K, H).
- Ramming and boarding were the principal tactics in fourteenth century sea battles, since cannon had only recently been introduced.
- 3672 *bernes* (Bj, Be). MS: *braynes* (Br, K). H reads *berynes*.
- 3675 *Up tier* (Be, K, H). MS: *Upcyne* (Br).
- 3678 *Many freke* (Bj, Be). MS: *freve* (Br, K, H).
- 3684 *englaimes* (Bj, Be, K, H). MS: *englymous* (Br).
- 3709 Galah is Gawain's sword, here personified as "a good gone."
- 3720 *is* (Be, K). MS: *and* (Br, H).
- 3743 Engendare may be a reference to Mordred's incestuous begetting (see Stanzaic *Morte Arthure*, lines 2955-56), though there is no direct reference to it in this poem.

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- 3773 The Montagues were a famous Northern English family. The head of the family was a supporter of Richard II and a suspected heretic. He rebelled against Henry IV in 1400; he was beheaded and his head was displayed on London Bridge as a warning to other potential traitors.
- 3796 *help*. Bj and Be emend to *help me*, but I have followed Br, K, and H in retaining MS.
- 3797 *so see us* (Br, Be, K, H). MS: *to us*.
- 3864 *Fris*. Bj and Be emend to *Frisland*, but I have followed Br, K, and H in retaining MS.
- 3869 The golden griffin (a winged dragon) is Gawain's usual heraldic device.
- 3891 *nib-blood*. Mordred and Gawain are half brothers; their mother is Arthur's sister.
- 3911 *yeyer* (Bj, Be, H, K). MS: *Fee* (Br).
- 3924 *Swalterr*. Bj and Be emend to *swaftr*, but I have followed Br, K, and H in retaining MS.
- 3929 *swruth* (Bj, Be, H). MS: *trewghe* (Br, K).
- 3937 It is unclear whether the MS reads *Guthede* or *Gachede*. The former makes more sense.
- 3942 *encircled* (Bj, Be, K, H). MS: *ensurchede* (Br).
- 3996 *kithe* (Bj, Be, H). MS: *kythe* (Br, K).
- 4010 *Carried it* (Br, Be, H). MS: *Kayed* (Br, K).
- 4017 *Done for him* (Bj, Be). MS: *Done for* (Br, K, H).
- 4020 *strike*. Bj, Be, and H emend to *bere*, but I have followed Br and K in retaining MS.

### Notes

- 4095 The banners must be defended not only for the sake of honor but because signals made with the banners are the only means of communication during a battle.
- 4129 *sere*. Bj and Be emend to *fele*, but I have followed Br, K, and H in retaining MS.
- 4157 *Why shor me* (Be). MS: *Qwyrhen*. K explains that an emendation may not really be necessary since the OED glosses the MS word in the same words as the emendation.
- 4181 *charles*. OL and Be emend to *charlith*, but I have followed Br, K, and H in retaining MS. Mordred adopts the cowardly stratagem of changing his heraldic devices, which Arthur would never do (see note on line 3650).
- 4221 *and in* (Br, Be, K, H). MS: *and*.
- 4223 *he ne* (Br, Be, K, H). MS: *ne he*.
- 4237 *felettes*. Be glossed as "rib-plates," following Finlayson. K argues that it means "loins," from OF *flet*, while H suggests "bands of muscular tissue, especially the loins" (p. 444).
- 4303 Arthur is said to have been buried at Glastonbury.
- 4305 *day*. Be emends to *dayer*, but I have followed Br, K, and H in retaining MS.
- 4326 *In manus* is a common Medieval short form of *Pater, in manus tuas commendo spiritum meum*: "Father, into thy hands I commend my spirit." Christ's last words on the cross according to Luke 23:46.
- 4332 *Requiem*. Mass for the dead.
- 4343 *Madr*. Bj and Be emend to *ris*, but I have followed Br, K, and H in retaining MS.
- 4346 *Brut*. The History of Britain, which begins with Brutus, who settled the country. *Brut* refers to any history of Britain, though the poet may have meant some specific work, such as the popular English prose *Brut*.

*Alliterative Morte Arthure*

- 4347 This and the following lines are not by the original author of our poem. This line, which is the inscription on Arthur's tomb (dating from 1278), was added by a later reader of the manuscript. The next lines concern the scribe rather than the author of the poem. Robert Thornton, who lived in Yorkshire, about 1440, wrote out the manuscript that contains this and a number of other romances. The final Latin line, asking that Robert be blessed for his work, was written by a grateful reader in the later fifteenth century.

## Glossary

Afrike Africa	bide abide, remain
again, againes against	bird(e) maiden
Almazine Germany	blinn(e) cease, stop
als, also, as as; not an intensifier	blithe glad, happy, calm
and, and yif if	blousk horse
anon immediately	borde board, table
appert open	(on)borde aboard ship
array order, arrange(ment)	bore wild boar
as see als	bote boat
ascrie shout, cry	boun prepare, go; ready
at from, or; to	bower bedroom, bower
austerer chance, adventure; risk, put in	boy knave, servant
j propensity	braid hasten, go
austeren bold, stern	brand sword
avantward forward guard	braste broke, burst
avensant seemly, noble	bred bread; roast, baked meat
awow vow	brence fierce, wild
ay ever, always	bren(ne) burn
ayer go, proceed, march, wander, travel	brent burned
bachelor young knight	breny hauberk, mail corslet
bale evil, pain, sorrow	breste breast
banneret senior knight, entitled to carry	brethe anger
a banner	brin(ne) burn
bataill division of an army, battle	brist break, burst
bede offer, proclaim	britten beat down, broken
believe leave, remain behind	broche pierce, stab, spit
ben to be; been; are	brode broad
bente field, ground	broder brother
berde beard	brothely fiercely, boldly
bere bear, carry	brown shining, brown
berse man	burgh town, fortress
bete bear	burlich, burly stately, strong

## Glossary

busk	go, hasten, prepare	cover up	get up on
bustous	wild, strong	covered	armored
but, but yif	unless, except	curious	skillfully made
by	by the time that, by	dede	dead, death
bydene	together, at well	dele	dash out, give
(all) bydene	immediately	delt	dealt, gave
captain	captain	dere	harm, injure
carp	speak, say	dere	costly, dear
castel	castle	derf	strong, dire
certes	certainly	destayn	destine
charge	load, burden	deth(e)	death
cheer	counenance, expression	devise	divide
chef	chief	dight	prepare(d), place(d), adorn(ed)
cheftain	chieftain	do, don	cause, order
chese	choose, chose	douspeer	high nobleman
chevalry	chivalry	doute	fear, doubt
chewe	achieve, attain, arrive at	drayn	drawn, dragged
child	young man, child	dreche	delay, wait
childer	children	dredle	dreaded, doubted
chis	make one's way	drede	dread, fear, doubt
cladde	clad	dreame	dream
clene	clean, bright, pure; completely	drerily	desirably, sadly
clenlich,	cleanly, cleanly, completely	drery	dreary
clepes	call, summon	drie	suffer, endure
clere	bright, clean, pure; completely	Brighthen	God
cleve	cot, cleave	drive	go
cog(ge)	ship	drew	drew, dragged
comlich,	comely	duchery	duchy, dukedom
coronal	diadem	durste	dare
corse	body	Dutch-men	Germans
cosin	relative	ech	each
cosin of kind	blood relative	echon	each one, every
coste	cost	eek	also
coude	could, knew how	eger	eager
courtains	courteous	egle	eagle
courtisy	courtesy	eier	heir
couthe	could, knew how	elles	else
cover	attain, recover, take		

## Glossary

<b>encroche</b> invade, encroach	<b>fomen</b> foemen
<b>enmy</b> enemy	<b>fonde</b> try, prove
<b>ere</b> before	<b>fonge</b> take, seize
<b>erl</b> earl	<b>for-thy</b> therefore
<b>erly</b> early	<b>forjoustid</b> outjousted
<b>erthe</b> earth	<b>forray</b> plunder
<b>escheve</b> achieve, obtain, get to	<b>forset</b> besiege, attack
<b>este</b> east	<b>found(e)</b> go, advance
<b>even</b> exactly, directly; even	<b>frain</b> ask
<b>eyes</b> edge of a wood	<b>fraint</b> try, seek, prove
<b>eyes</b> eyes	<b>frap</b> company, troop
<b>fader</b> father, sir	<b>free</b> noble
<b>fain</b> eager, glad	<b>freelich, freely</b> noble, nobly
<b>faund(e)</b> found	<b>frek</b> bold
<b>feld</b> field	<b>freke</b> man
<b>felie</b> many	<b>freliklich</b> , <b>frekly</b> boldly
<b>fell</b> fierce	<b>freud</b> friend, friends
<b>feud</b> fiend	<b>freudlich</b> , <b>frendly</b> friendly
<b>fer</b> far	<b>fresh</b> eager, strong
<b>ferd</b> frightened, afraided	<b>freshliche</b> , <b>freshly</b> eagerly, strongly
<b>ferre</b> fear	<b>fro</b> from
<b>ferre</b> companion	<b>furth</b> ford, stream
<b>(in) ferre</b> together	
<b>ferk</b> go, stride (forth), hasten	<b>gab</b> tell lies, gossip
<b>ferly, ferlich</b> wonder; wondrously	<b>gader</b> gather
<b>ferross</b> distance	<b>gain</b> , <b>gaines</b> quick, quickest
<b>(o)ferross</b> from afar	<b>(at the) gainest</b> by the quickest way
<b>fers</b> fierce	<b>gallard</b> jolly, bold
<b>fersly, ferslich</b> fiercely	<b>game</b> pleasure, mirth
<b>festle</b> feast	<b>gan</b> did
<b>fewter</b> the spear-rest on saddle	<b>gar(t)</b> cause(d), order(ed)
<b>fey</b> dead, fated to die	<b>gesseraunt</b> 豪奢的, <b>corselet</b>
<b>feith</b> wood, forest	<b>gird</b> go, go to; strike, attack
<b>flamand</b> flaming, shining, gleaming	<b>give</b> , <b>gave</b> cause(d)
<b>flower</b> flower	<b>glepin</b> be terrified, amazed
<b>fo</b> for	<b>gome</b> man
<b>foime</b> darl, stab	<b>gonfamous</b> banner
<b>folde</b> earth, ground	<b>gonne</b> did
	<b>goet</b> shirt

## Glossary

graith	go, prepare	hider	hither
graithelich, grathely	readily, vigorously	hie	hasten
gree	victory, prize	(on) hie	hastily
gref	grief	hiely	quickly
gret weep		hight	called, promised
gretz	great	hight	height
grette	wife	(on) hight	on high
greve	woods, grove	hold,	(held, holden) consider(ed), regard(ed)
greve	grave	hole	whole, round
gron	groan	hollich,	holly wholly
guerdons	rewards	holt	wood, forest
gule, gule(d), guli(de)	guide(ed)	hope	suppose, expect
half	side, half	hove	wait, remain, stand, linger
harageous	bold, violent	hundreth	hundred
harlot	rascal, scoundrel	ich,	ich a each, every
hastel	noble, bold	ichon	each one
hastain	proud, pride	illk(r), ilken	each, every; some
hed	head	iron	angry, irate
heli	heat	ivel	evil
helle	hide, conceal	iswi	certainly
hende	courteous, skillful, handy	jag	pierce, stab
hendely	courteously, skillfully	join	attack
hent(e)	seized, took	journee	day's work, day's fight, journey
heraud	herald	kaire	go
herberage	lodging	keep	watch, herd, wait
here (herde)	hear(d)	kidd	famous, well known
herken	hearken, listen	kith	native land
herne-pas	brain-pas, skull	kithe	make known, declare
herte	heart	knew (knew)	acknowledge(d), recognize(d)
hertily, hertilich	heartily; mortally; cheerfully	laught	seized, took
hest	command; promise	laine	conceal, hide
hette (hette)	command(ed), promise(d)	large	distance
hethe	ground, heath	late	expression, countenance
heve	heave, lift up		
heved	head		
heven	heaven		
hew	hue, color		

## Glossary

<b>leche</b> physician; to give medical attention	<b>mede</b> meadow, mead
<b>lede</b> man, prince, nation	<b>mele</b> speak, say
<b>lede</b> lead	<b>mene(d)</b> mean (meant), intend(ed)
<b>lees</b> lies, falsehood	<b>mene(d)</b> say (said), tell (told)
<b>lef</b> dear, good	<b>mensik</b> courtesy, honor
<b>lige-men</b> liege-men	<b>mensikfully</b> honorably, courteously
<b>lele</b> loyal	<b>merk</b> go, march; proceed; alloc, mete out
<b>lely</b> loyalty	<b>mete</b> food, meal
<b>leman</b> lover, beloved	<b>might</b> could
<b>lende (lente)</b> stay(ed), remain(ed)	<b>mikel</b> much, large
<b>lende (lente)</b> grant(ed), give (gave)	<b>mo</b> more
<b>lene</b> lean	<b>mod</b> mind, disposition
<b>lenge</b> stay, remain; live	<b>moder</b> mother
<b>lenger</b> longer	<b>molde</b> earth, ground
<b>lenche</b> length	<b>mon</b> must
<b>lenpe</b> leap	<b>mone</b> moon, speak
<b>let</b> hinder, prevent, hindrance, delay	<b>morne</b> mourn
<b>lev</b> dear	<b>morrow</b> morning
<b>leve(d)</b> leave (left)	<b>moste</b> most
<b>lever</b> rather	<b>mot</b> may
<b>ligges</b> lies, reclines	<b>mot ye worthe</b> may you be
<b>like</b> please	 ne nor
<b>liking</b> pleasure, desire; pleasing	 ne...ne not...nor, neither...nor
<b>limm</b> limb	 needes message, errand
<b>limpe</b> befall, take place	 ner near, nearer
<b>lithe</b> pleasant, graceful	 never name, tell
<b>lithe</b> listen, hear	 nolde would not, did not want to
<b>long(es)</b> belong to; to long for, desire	 nomen took, seized
<b>lordinges</b> lords	 noxes occasion
<b>lorn</b> lost	 nother neither
<b>lothly, lothliche</b> loathly, hateful	 of by, from; of
<b>lough</b> laughed	 one one, alone
<b>Lombardy</b> Lombardy	 ones once
<b>Lyby</b> Lydia	 ought owned, possessed
 <b>main</b> strong, important; strength	 outray injure, outrage
<b>mall</b> hit, hammer	 overling overlord
<b>march</b> country, border, borderland	 own own, possess
<b>may</b> , can, be able	

## Glossary

owes	own	resoun	reason
over	our	reve	plunder, take
palais	palace, castle	rew	rule
paynim	pagan	(him) rewes	it saddens him
pece	piece	rewle	rule
persewed	pursued	rewm	realm
pight	adorned, placed, arranged	rewth	sorrow, pity, pain
people	people	rich	strong, noble; wealthy; great
press	go, hasten	right	adjuit, set right
press	crowd, company	right	straight, direct; directly
prik	ride, spur	riot	amare oneself, plunder; amusement
priker	rider	rit	rear, slash
pris	excellent, choice	rive	rip, tear
proffer	offer oneself for battle, attack	roo	peace, tranquility; wheel
purpure	purple; purple cloth, dye	rost	company, troop
quod	said	roy	king
raight	drew, pulled, took	sale	hall
raik	go; proceed, set out; rush	salut	greet, salute
rank	strong, stout	Sarazen	Saracen
rathe	quick; quickly	says	to say
raunson	ransom, plunder	se	sea
real	royal; stately	seek	go
really	royally	sege	siege, besiege
realtee	royalty	segge	man
reche	reach, offer, give	seke	if, sick
reddour	fear	seker	sure, certain; true, swear
rede (redde)	advise(d), read	sekerest	strongest, most dependable
redily	readily, quickly	sekerly	certainly
redy	ready	selcouthe	rare
regn(e)	reign	semble	on attack
reme	realm	semble	assemble
renk	man	(him) seemes	he seems
rent	revenue, tax	seyn	since, then
reve	rear	seere	various, many
reweward	rearguard	resoun	reason
rewe	attack, rush	shalk	man
		sheer	shear, cut

## Glossary

shield	shield	stern	strong, stern
sheltron	troop, phalanx	steric	leap, go
shend (shent)	shame(d), destroy(ed)	steven	voice
shew	appear, show, to be seen	stiff	strong, stout
shift	arrange, order, move about	stonay	astonish
shire	bright, shining; fair, noble	stouade	space of time, while
sho	she	stour	battle
sholde	should, man	streme	stream
shred	shredded, cut with scalloped edges	strength	strength, stronghold
sho	she	stroy	destroy
sime	since	suite	group, company
sithe	since, then, afterwards	(in) suite	together
sle	slay, kill	sojourn	rest, sojourn
slo	slay, kill	sorpeised	captured, taken
slogh	slay, killed	Sury	Syria
so	as	swap	cut, slash
sodenly	suddenly	swarth	grassy ground
solace	pleasure, rest	swelt	die, faint
somenun	alarm	swilk	rush
sonder	apart, asunder; separate	swithe	fast, quick, very
(in) sonder	asunder, in pieces	take	give, offer, take
soon	immediately	teen	sorrow, grief; grieve
sooth	truth	tere	tear
soper,	souper dinner, meal	there as	there
sorte	company, troop	there where	there
soudour	mercenary soldier	thider	thither
sought	went	thinkes	seems
sound	healthy; in safety	thir	these
sowdan	sultan	thirt	stab, pierce
spake	spoke	tho	then
speche	speech	tho	those
speed	succed	thole	allow, suffer
spike	speak	thret	threaten
sperc	spear	thro	bold, strong; trouble
spredre,	spreddre spread	throlly	boldly, strongly
sprent	leaped	tidandes	ridings, news
sprung	sprung, broken	tide	time; happen, betide
squier	squire	til	to, until
stale	troop, company		

## Glossary

tane, tinst lose; lost	wepen weapon
tite quickly	werily wearily
tithinges, titheandes riding, news	werray make war on, attack
togeder together	wery weary
to-morn tomorrow	wex, waxed grow, became
torfie trouble, sorrow	widerwiane enemy
tower tower	wight strong person
trawst trust	(no) wight not at all
trechery treachery	wighthly strongly
tresoun treason	wighthness strength, boldness
treasure treasure	wilse want, desire
trete deal, treat with, bargain	wile know
trew true	with by means of, with
trewe, trewes truce	wo woe
trewlich, trewly truly	wode mad, crazy
trewth truth, troth, pledged word	wolde would, desired
trine go move	wonde hesitate, doubt
tristly boldly, surely	wonne dwell
trouffe tribe	work do, make, effect
trouth plighted word, truth	worship honor
trow suppose, expect	worthe become, be
trump mumper; blow on a mumper	wot know
Tuskane Tuscany	wrake trouble, ruin
unsought hostile	wreken avenge, wreak
unsoughtly with hostile intent	wroke avenged, wreaked
unsound injured, ill, not healthy	wrought did, made, effected
unwinly sadly, joylessly	wyte man
	yare ready
wandreth trouble, sorrow	yede wot
ware aware	yeld yield
warlaw warlock, wizard	yolden, yolden yielded
weed garment, clothing; armor	yenne control, possess
weca expect, suppose; doubt	yere year
weld rule, control, wield	yerne years, desire; eagerly
welth prosperity, joy	yif if
welth wealth	ynew many, enough
wend turn, go	yode went
wend supposed, thought	young young

## TEAMS

### Middle English Texts Series

The goal of the Middle English Text Series is to make available to teachers and students texts which occupy an important place in the literary and cultural canon but which have not been readily available in student editions.

The focus is upon literature adjacent to that normally in print, which teachers need in compiling the syllabuses they wish to teach. The editions maintain the linguistic integrity of the original work but within the parameters of modern reading conventions.

The project is sponsored by the Consortium for the Teaching of the Middle Ages (TEAMS) and is affiliated with the Medieval Institute of Western Michigan University at Kalamazoo.



T E A M S

